

# **Data-Driven Models: An Alternative Discrete Hedging Strategy**

by

Ke Nian

A thesis  
presented to the University of Waterloo  
in fulfillment of the  
thesis requirement for the degree of  
Doctor of Philosophy  
in  
Computer Science

Waterloo, Ontario, Canada, 2020

© Ke Nian 2020

## **Examining Committee Membership**

The following served on the Examining Committee for this thesis. The decision of the Examining Committee is by majority vote.

External Examiner:       undetermined  
Professor, School of Computer Science, University of Undetermined

Supervisor(s):           Yuying Li  
Professor, School of Computer Science, University of Waterloo  
Thomas F. Coleman  
Professor, Department of Combinatoric and Optimization, University of Waterloo

Internal Examiner:       Justin W.L. Wan  
Professor, School of Computer Science, University of Waterloo

Internal Examiner:       Yaoliang Yu  
Assistant Professor, School of Computer Science, University of Waterloo

Internal-External Member: undetermined  
Professor, Dept. of Math of Science, University of Waterloo

I hereby declare that I am the sole author of this thesis. This is a true copy of the thesis, including any required final revisions, as accepted by my examiners.

I understand that my thesis may be made electronically available to the public.

## Abstract

Options hedging is a critical problem in financial risk management. The prevailing approach in financial derivative pricing and hedging has been to first assume a parametric model describing the underlying price dynamics. An option model function  $V$  is then calibrated to current market option prices and various sensitivities are computed and used to hedge the option risk. It has been recognized that computing hedging position from the sensitivity of the calibrated model option value function is inadequate in minimizing variance of the option hedge risk, as it fails to capture the model parameter dependence on the underlying price. We propose several data-driven approaches to directly learn a hedging function from the historical market option and underlying data by minimizing certain measure of the local hedging risk and total hedging risk. This thesis will focus on answering the following questions: 1) Can we efficiently build direct data-driven models for discrete hedging problem that outperform existing state-of-art parametric hedging models based on the market prices? 2) Can we incorporate feature selection and feature extraction into the data-driven models to further improve the performance of the discrete hedging? 3) Can we build efficient models for both the one-step hedging problem and multi-steps hedging problem based on the state-of-art learning framework such as deep learning framework and kernel learning framework?

Using the S&P 500 index daily option data for more than a decade ending in August 2015, we first propose a direct data-driven approach [131] based on kernel learning framework and we demonstrate that the proposed method outperforms the parametric minimum variance hedging method proposed in [102], as well as minimum variance hedging corrective techniques based on stochastic volatility or local volatility models. Furthermore, we show that the proposed approach achieves significant gain over the implied Black-Scholes delta hedging for weekly and monthly hedging.

Following the direct data-driven kernel learning approach [131], we propose a robust encoder-decoder Gated Recurrent Unit (GRU),  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ , for optimal discrete option hedging. The proposed  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  utilizes the Black-Scholes model as a pre-trained model and incorporates sequential information and feature selection. Using the S&P 500 index European option market data from January 2, 2004 to August 31, 2015, we demonstrate that the weekly and monthly hedging performance of the proposed  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  significantly surpasses that of the data-driven minimum variance (MV) method in [102], the regularized kernel data-driven model [131], and the SABR-Bartlett method [88]. In addition, the daily hedging performance of the proposed  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  also surpasses that of MV methods in [102] based on parametric models, the kernel method [131] and SABR-Bartlett method [88].

Lastly, we design a multi-steps data-driven models  $\text{GRU}_{\text{total}}$  based on the  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  to hedge the option discretely until the expiry. We utilize SABR model and Local Volatility Function (LVF) to augment existing market data and thus alleviate the problem of scarcity in market option prices. The augmented market data is used to train a sufficient multi-steps total hedging model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{total}}$  that outperforms the comparing one-step hedging model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{extlocal}}$ .

## **Acknowledgements**

I would like to thank all the little people who made this thesis possible.

## **Dedication**

This is dedicated to the one I love.

# Table of Contents

<b>List of Tables</b>	<b>x</b>
<b>List of Figures</b>	<b>xiii</b>
<b>1 Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 Contribution . . . . .	3
1.2 Outline . . . . .	5
<b>2 Option Hedging: From Past to Present</b>	<b>6</b>
2.1 Discrete Hedging Problem . . . . .	6
2.1.1 Discrete Local Hedging Risk . . . . .	7
2.1.2 Discrete Total Hedging Risk . . . . .	9
2.1.3 Interest Rate and Dividend . . . . .	10
2.2 Option Pricing Model . . . . .	11
2.2.1 Black-Scholes Model . . . . .	11
2.2.2 Heston Model . . . . .	14
2.2.3 SABR Model . . . . .	17
2.3 Option Hedging Using the Sensitivity from Pricing Model . . . . .	19
2.3.1 Classical Hedging Position From Pricing Model . . . . .	19
2.3.2 Parameter Dependence on Underlying Asset . . . . .	21
2.3.3 Corrections Under Black-Scholes Framework . . . . .	22
2.4 Overview of the Data-Driven Hedging Models . . . . .	29

<b>3</b>	<b>Data-Driven Kernel Learning Framework for Local Hedging Risk</b>	<b>31</b>
3.1	Regularized Kernel Pricing Model . . . . .	32
3.1.1	Indirect Hedging Positions From Kernel Pricing Functions . . . . .	34
3.2	Regularized Kernel Hedging Model . . . . .	35
3.3	Cross Validation . . . . .	36
3.4	Comparison using synthetic data . . . . .	39
3.5	Enhancement Over the Kernel Local Hedging Model . . . . .	46
<b>4</b>	<b>Data-Driven Sequential Learning Framework for Local Hedging Risk</b>	<b>47</b>
4.1	The Proposed $\text{GRU}_\delta$ for market data-driven hedging . . . . .	48
4.1.1	Local Discrete Hedging GRU Model . . . . .	48
4.1.2	Feature Selection via Embedded Feature Weighting . . . . .	50
4.1.3	GRU Encoder . . . . .	50
4.1.4	Decoder . . . . .	52
4.1.5	Robust Loss Function . . . . .	52
4.2	Training $\text{GRU}_\delta$ . . . . .	53
4.2.1	Initialization . . . . .	54
4.2.2	Optimization . . . . .	54
4.2.3	Pre-training and Regularization . . . . .	54
4.2.4	Model Re-use and Re-initialization . . . . .	56
4.3	Alternative Data-Driven Hedging Models Under Neural Network Framework . . . . .	57
<b>5</b>	<b>Local Discrete Hedging Performance Comparison Using S&amp;P 500 index Options</b>	<b>60</b>
5.1	Data and Experimental Setting . . . . .	60
5.1.1	Weekly and Monthly Hedging Comparisons . . . . .	62
5.1.2	Feature Importance . . . . .	64
5.1.3	Daily Hedging Comparison . . . . .	66
5.2	From Local Hedging Models to Total Hedging Models . . . . .	69



<b>6</b>	<b>Data-Driven Sequential Learning Framework for Total Hedging Risk</b>	<b>70</b>
6.1	Data Augmentation for Market Option Data . . . . .	70
6.1.1	No-Arbitrage Price Surface . . . . .	72
6.1.2	Data Augmentation for Training Scenarios . . . . .	77
6.1.3	Data Augmentation for Testing Scenarios . . . . .	79
6.1.4	Alternative Methods for Calibrating Arbitrage-Free Surface . . . . .	80
6.2	Total Hedging Model . . . . .	80
6.2.1	The Difference Between $\text{GRU}_\delta$ And $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$ . . . . .	82
6.2.2	Training Objective For $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$ . . . . .	85
6.2.3	Training Procedure For $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$ and $\text{GRU}_{\text{LOCAL}}$ . . . . .	86
6.3	Total Discrete Hedging Performance Comparison Using S&P 500 index Options	87
6.3.1	Data and Experimental Setting . . . . .	88
6.3.2	Call Option Total Hedging Comparison . . . . .	89
6.3.3	Put Option Total Hedging Comparison . . . . .	95
6.3.4	Sell-Side Risk Versus Buy-Side Risk . . . . .	100
<b>7</b>	<b>Conclusion and Future Work</b>	<b>106</b>
	<b>References</b>	<b>109</b>

# List of Tables

2.1	Daily local hedging risk comparison between original delta $\delta_{t,T,K}^{SABR}$ from SABR model and $\delta_{t,T,K}^{Bartlett}$ from Bartlett correction. The performance is evaluated in terms of improvement over Black-Scholes delta on local hedging risk. . . . .	28
3.1	Parameters for the Heston model. This set of parameters is used to generate synthetic experiments for demonstrating the effectiveness of $DKL_{SPL}$ on local hedging. . . . .	41
3.2	Daily hedging comparison on synthetic experiments between various hedging strategies. The hedging performance is evaluated in terms of local hedging risk. .	42
3.3	Weekly hedging comparison on synthetic experiments between various hedging strategies. The hedging performance is evaluated in terms of local hedging risk. .	43
3.4	Monthly hedging comparison on synthetic experiments between various hedging strategies. The hedging performance is evaluated in terms of local hedging risk. .	43
3.5	Daily hedging comparison on synthetic experiments between various hedging strategies. One additional feature $\delta_{BS}$ is added. The hedging performance is evaluated in terms of local hedging risk. . . . .	44
3.6	Weekly hedging comparison on synthetic experiments between various hedging strategies. One additional feature $\delta_{BS}$ is added. The hedging performance is evaluated in terms of local hedging risk. . . . .	45
3.7	Monthly hedging comparison on synthetic experiments between various hedging strategies. One additional feature $\delta_{BS}$ is added. The hedging performance is evaluated in terms of local hedging risk. . . . .	45
4.1	Meta-parameters for the trust-region algorithm. The trust-region algorithm is used for training all the data-driven models based on neural network framework in this thesis. . . . .	54
5.1	Sequential features for model $GRU_{\delta}$ at time $t$ are the historical time series of the features listed in this table . . . . .	61
5.2	Local features $\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}$ at time $t$ for model $GRU_{\delta}$ . . . . .	61

5.3	S&P 500 call options hedging comparison on traded data, bold entries indicating best Gain from $GRU_{\delta}$ . The Gain ratio is a measure for the local hedging performance. The larger the gain ratio is, the better improvement the model achieves over the baseline BS delta hedging method in terms of local hedging risk. The gain ratio is reported on different delta buckets. . . . .	63
5.4	S&P 500 put options hedging comparison on traded data, bold entries indicating best Gain from $GRU_{\delta}$ . The Gain ratio is a measure for the local hedging performance. The larger the gain ratio is, the better improvement the model achieves over the baseline BS delta hedging method in terms of local hedging risk. The gain ratio is reported on different delta buckets. . . . .	64
5.5	S&P 500 call option hedging for 1-business day: bold entries indicating best Gain from $GRU_{\delta}$ . The Gain ratio is a measure for the local hedging performance. The larger the gain ratio is, the better improvement the model achieves over the baseline BS delta hedging method in terms of local hedging risk. The gain ratio is reported on different delta buckets. . . . .	68
5.6	S&P 500 put option hedging for 1-business day: bold entries indicating best Gain from $GRU_{\delta}$ . The Gain ratio is a measure for the local hedging performance. The larger the gain ratio is, the better improvement the model achieves over the baseline BS delta hedging method in terms of local hedging risk. The gain ratio is reported on different delta buckets. . . . .	68
6.1	Sequential features for $GRU_{TOTAL}$ and $GRU_{LOCAL}$ at time $t$ are the historical time series of features listed in this table. . . . .	88
6.2	Summary of weekly hedging S&P 500 call options for 100 business days with total hedging evaluation criteria. Please note that the total hedging evaluation in this table assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading. . . . .	90
6.3	Summary of monthly hedging S&P 500 call options for 100 business days with total hedging evaluation criteria. Please note that the total hedging evaluation in this table assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading. . . . .	93
6.4	Summary of weekly hedging S&P 500 put options for 100 Business days with total hedging evaluation criteria. Please note that the total hedging evaluation in this table assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading. . . . .	96
6.5	Summary of monthly hedging S&P 500 put options for 100 business days with total hedging evaluation criteria. Please note that the total hedging evaluation in this table assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading. . . . .	98
6.6	Summary of weekly hedging S&P 500 call options for 100 business days with total hedging evaluation criteria. Please note that the total hedging evaluation in this table assumes we are at the buy-side of the option trading. . . . .	101

6.7	Summary of monthly hedging S&P 500 call options for 100 business days with total hedging evaluation criteria. Please note that the total hedging evaluation in this table assumes we are at the buy-side of the option trading. . . . .	102
6.8	Summary of weekly hedging S&P 500 put options for 100 Business days with total hedging evaluation criteria. Please note that the total hedging evaluation in this table assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading. . . . .	104
6.9	Summary of monthly hedging S&P 500 put options for 100 business days with total hedging evaluation criteria. Please note that the total hedging evaluation in this table assumes we are at the buy-side of the option trading. . . . .	105

# List of Figures

- 2.1 Comparing the original SABR delta  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{SABR}$  and Bartlett delta  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{Bartlett}$  from SABR models calibrated with  $\beta = 0, 0.5, 1.0$  on 2012-01-04 for S&P500 index option. The computation of Bartlett delta  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{Bartlett}$  is more robust to the choice of  $\beta$ . . . . . 28
- 4.1 GRU $_{\delta}$ : GRU encode-decoder hedging model. The encoder summarizes the time series  $\mathbf{Y}_t^{T,K} = [\mathbf{y}_{\tau_1}^{T,K}, \dots, \mathbf{y}_{\tau_{N+1}}^{T,K}]$  as a succinct vector  $\hat{\mathbf{h}}_E$ . The decoder outputs the hedging position based on the vector  $\hat{\mathbf{h}}_E$  and the local feature vector  $\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}$  observed at the hedging time  $t$ . More specifically, in the decoder, a candidate output  $\hat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M$  is firstly produced. The final output  $\delta_{t,T,K}^M$  is computed based on the linear combination of BS delta  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}$  and the candidate output  $\hat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M$ . The combination weight is determined by  $W_{\delta}$ . The feature weight  $\omega^L$  and  $\omega^S$  are used to produce the weighted local feature and  $\hat{\mathbf{x}}_t^{T,K}$  and weighted sequential feature  $\hat{\mathbf{y}}_{\tau}^{T,K}$  respectively. The weighting acts as a feature selection process. Each edge in the graph has an arrow on it, pointing from a node whose output is used by the node pointed by the arrow as an input. . . . . 49
- 4.2 Illustration of the GRU cell. At step  $i$ , GRU cell produces a vector  $\mathbf{h}_i$  as the current hidden states based on the hidden states produced from the previous steps  $\mathbf{h}_{i-1}$  and the input  $\hat{\mathbf{y}}_{\tau_i}^{T,K}$ . The reset unit produces the weight  $\mathbf{r}_i$  which determines how much information is retained from  $\mathbf{h}_{i-1}$ . The final output from the GRU cell  $\mathbf{h}_i$  is computed based on a weighted combination of the previous activation  $\mathbf{h}_{i-1}$  and the candidate activation  $\hat{\mathbf{h}}_i$ , where the combination weight  $\mathbf{z}_i$  is produced by the update unit. Each edge in the graph has an arrow on it, pointing from a node whose output is used by the node pointed by the arrow as an input. . . . . 51

4.3	<p><math>\text{NN}_\delta</math>: decoder GRU only. This simplified model only retains the decoder. The decoder computes the hedging position solely based on the information vector <math>\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}</math> observed at time <math>t</math>. A candidate output <math>\hat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M</math> is produced. The final output <math>\delta_{t,T,K}^M</math> is computed based on the linear combination of BS delta <math>\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}</math> and the candidate output <math>\hat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M</math>. The combination weight is determined by <math>W_\delta</math>. The feature weight <math>\omega^L</math> is used to produce the weighted local feature <math>\hat{\mathbf{x}}_t^{T,K}</math>. The weighting acts as a feature selection process. Each edge in the graph has an arrow on it, pointing from a node whose output is used by the node pointed by the arrow as an input. . . . .</p>	58
4.4	<p><math>\text{GRU}_c</math>: This simplified model removes the output gate in the decoder. The encoder summarizes the time series <math>\mathbf{Y}_t^{T,K} = [\mathbf{y}_{\tau_1}^{T,K}, \dots, \mathbf{y}_{\tau_{N+1}}^{T,K}]</math> as a succinct vector <math>\hat{\mathbf{h}}_E</math>. The decoder outputs the hedging position based on the vector <math>\hat{\mathbf{h}}_E</math> and the local feature vector <math>\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}</math> observed at the hedging time <math>t</math> directly. The output gate is removed and we do not combine the output with <math>\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}</math> using linear combination as in Figure 4.1. Each edge in the graph has an arrow on it, pointing from a node whose output is used by the node pointed by the arrow as an input. . . . .</p>	59
5.1	Feature scores for weekly and monthly hedging models $\text{GRU}_\delta$ on traded S&P500 call option data. . . . .	65
5.2	Feature score for weekly and monthly hedging models $\text{GRU}_\delta$ on traded S&P500 put option data . . . . .	66
5.3	Feature score for daily hedging model $\text{GRU}_\delta$ : S&P500 call option (traded data) .	69
5.4	Feature score for daily hedging model $\text{GRU}_\delta$ : S&P500 put option (traded data) .	69
6.1	The price surface and implied volatility surface calibrated for SP500 index Call Options on 2012-01-04. . . . .	78
6.2	<p><math>\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}</math>: GRU encode-decoder total hedging model. The encoder summarizes the time series <math>\mathbf{Y}_t^{T,K} = [\mathbf{y}_{\tau_1}^{T,K}, \dots, \mathbf{y}_{\tau_{N+1}}^{T,K}]</math> as a succinct vector <math>\hat{\mathbf{h}}_E</math>. The decoder outputs the hedging position based on the vector <math>\hat{\mathbf{h}}_E</math> and the previous hedging position <math>\delta_{t-\Delta t, T, K}^M</math> observed at the hedging time <math>t</math>. More specifically, in the decoder, a candidate output <math>\hat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M</math> is firstly produced. The final output <math>\delta_{t,T,K}^M</math> is computed based on the linear combination of BS delta <math>\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}</math> and the candidate output <math>\hat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M</math>. The combination weight is determined by <math>W_\delta</math>. The feature weight <math>\omega^L</math> is used to compute weighted sequential feature <math>\hat{\mathbf{y}}_\tau^{T,K}</math>. The weighting acts as a feature selection process. Each edge in the graph has an arrow on it, pointing from a node whose output is used by the node pointed by the arrow as an input. The output <math>\delta_{t,T,K}^M</math> at <math>t</math> is used as the input for next step <math>t + \Delta t</math>. . . . .</p>	83

6.3	Comparing total model $GRU_{TOTAL}$ and local model $GRU_{LOCAL}$ on weekly hedging S&P 500 call options in terms of the distribution of the relative hedging portfolio value at the expiries Please note that the distribution in this figure assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading. . . . .	91
6.4	Comparing total model $GRU_{TOTAL}$ and BS Model on weekly hedging S&P 500 call options in terms of the the distribution of the relative hedging portfolio value at the expiries. Please note that the distribution in this figure assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading. . . . .	91
6.5	Comparing total model $GRU_{TOTAL}$ and Bartlett model on weekly hedging S&P 500 call options in terms of the distribution of the relative hedging portfolio value at the expiries. Please note that the distribution in this figure assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading. . . . .	91
6.6	Comparing total model $GRU_{TOTAL}$ and local model $GRU_{LOCAL}$ on monthly hedging S&P 500 call options in terms of thethe distribution of the relative hedging portfolio value at the expiries. Please note that the distribution in this figure assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading. . . . .	94
6.7	Comparing total model $GRU_{TOTAL}$ and BS model on monthly hedging S&P 500 call options in terms of the distribution of the relative hedging portfolio value at the expiries. Please note that the distribution in this figure assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading. . . . .	94
6.8	Comparing total model $GRU_{TOTAL}$ and bartlett model on monthly hedging S&P 500 call options in terms of the distribution of the relative hedging portfolio value at the expiries. Please note that the distribution in this figure assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading. . . . .	94
6.9	Comparing total model $GRU_{TOTAL}$ and local model $GRU_{LOCAL}$ on weekly hedging put options in terms of the distribution of the relative hedging portfolio value at the expiries. Please note that the distribution in this figure assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading. . . . .	97
6.10	Comparing total model $GRU_{TOTAL}$ and BS model on weekly hedging put options in terms of the distribution of the relative hedging portfolio value at the expiries. Please note that the distribution in this figure assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading. . . . .	97
6.11	Comparing total model $GRU_{TOTAL}$ and Bartlett model on weekly hedging put options in terms of the distribution of the relative hedging portfolio value at the expiries. Please note that the distribution in this figure assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading. . . . .	97
6.12	Comparing total model $GRU_{TOTAL}$ and local model $GRU_{LOCAL}$ on monthly hedging put options in terms of the distribution of the relative hedging portfolio value at the expiries. Please note that the distribution in this figure assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading. . . . .	99

6.13	Comparing total model $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$ and BS model on monthly hedging put options in terms of the distribution of the relative hedging portfolio value at the expiries. Please note that the distribution in this figure assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading. . . . .	99
6.14	Comparing total model $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$ and Bartlett model on monthly hedging put options in terms of the distribution of the relative hedging portfolio value at the expiries. Please note that the distribution in this figure assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading. . . . .	99



# Chapter 1

## Introduction

Options hedging is a critical problem in financial risk management. The traditional approach in financial derivative pricing and hedging relies heavily on parametric assumptions describing the dynamics of underlying asset. The common practice is to calibrate an option pricing function based on the specific parametric model and compute various sensitivities to hedge option risk. For example, the sensitivity of the option value function to the underlying price is used in delta hedging. Under the assumption of a complete market [151] where one can continuously rebalance the hedging portfolio, the value of an option written on the underlying asset can be perfectly replicated by a hedging portfolio consisting of the underlying asset and the risk-free asset, . In practice, we have to rebalance the hedging portfolio discretely instead of continuously due to the existence of the transaction cost. The practice of adjusting the hedging portfolio discretely is often referred to as discrete hedging.

There are many parametric models proposed to describe the dynamics of underlying asset. The original and most celebrated parametric Black-Scholes (BS) model uses a constant volatility [19, 127], which is shown to produce inaccurate option prices particularly for deeply out-of-the-money options and deeply in-the-money options [78]. In addition, the BS model is unable to capture the non-zero correlation between the volatility and the underlying asset price, e.g., [71, 21]. The practitioner's BS delta hedging approach sets the constant volatility in the BS model to the implied volatility calibrated to the market price at the time of re-balancing. Many alternative parametric models have been proposed to improve the BS model, including the Stochastic Volatility (SV) model, e.g., [89, 93, 101, 12], the Local Volatility Function (LVF) model [40, 58, 144, 60], and the jump model, e.g., [90, 111]. Unfortunately, all models have been shown to have their limitations in accurately modeling option market prices.

Errors in the option value model have significant implications in hedging. Consider, for example, when the hedging position is computed from the sensitivity of the option value function calibrated at the hedging time, the computed hedging position only depends on the assumed dynamics of underlying price and the current market option prices. Unless the assumed dynamics for the underlying price is exact and all assumptions that results in the option pricing function are all valid, the option function calibrated at the hedging time cannot predict the future option

market price.

Specifically, let  $V(S, t, T, K, r, q; \theta^*)$  be the option value function and  $\theta^*$  be the vector of model parameters of the assumed option pricing model. At the hedging time  $t$ , assume that we calibrate the model price to match the market option price so that

$$V(S_t, t, T, K, r_t, q_t; \theta^*) = V_{t, T, K}^{mkt} \quad (1.0.1)$$

where  $V_{t, T, K}^{mkt}$  denotes the actual market option price at time  $t$  with strike price  $K$  and the expiry date  $T$ ,  $S_t$  denotes the underlying price at  $t$ ,  $r_t$  denotes the risk-free rate at  $t$  and  $q_t$  denotes the dividend yield at  $t$ . The option value function  $V(S, t, T, K, r, q; \theta^*)$ , calibrated to market price at time  $t$ , does not ensure that the option delta from the pricing model  $\frac{\partial V}{\partial S}$  equals to  $\frac{dV^{mkt}}{dS}$ , which is indeed unknown, and requires the modelling of the dependence of the calibrated model parameter on the underlying price [131, 40, 102]. The missing sensitivity  $\frac{\partial \theta^*}{\partial S}$ , is difficult to account for and is often ignored, though for some models, corrections have been proposed to capture the dependence [102, 88, 15].

Since machine learning algorithms usually do not impose assumptions on the model to be learned, they have recently been adopted to determine an option value function directly from the market data, with the goal of avoiding the model misspecification issues from the parametric modeling approach e.g., [84, 73, 104]. Unfortunately, using nonparametric learning, hedging positions still need to be computed from the sensitivity of the model value function. While no assumption is explicitly made for the dynamics of underlying asset, the option value function is determined by data through cross-validation, leading to training errors. Since there is no assurance that the sensitivity of the learned option value function with regards to underlying asset matches that the sensitivity of the market option price, the parameters of the model learned directly from data can similarly exhibit dependence on the underlying price. When the hedging position is computed from the partial derivative of the data-driven option value function, e.g., [104], this dependence cannot be accounted for and again is ignored. Hence, option hedging risk remains insufficiently minimized.

Furthermore, using option delta from pricing model  $\frac{\partial V}{\partial S}$  as the hedging position becomes inadequate when discrete hedging is performed in practice, particularly when rebalancing becomes infrequent. Instead, optimal discrete hedging strategy can be determined directly using an appropriate objective in the discrete hedging context, e.g., minimizing the variance of the hedging error, [102, 7, 83].

In hedging, the ultimate goal is to discover a hedging strategy which minimizes the hedging error measured by the market option and underlying prices. With the increasing availability of market option prices, a timely question arises: is it possible to learn optimal hedging positions directly from market option price and underlying price data? Up until now, research in learning the hedging position directly from market data is scarce. Recently, a data-driven approach [102] is proposed to learn a parametric model for the minimum variance delta hedging based on the analysis of the BS option greeks and underlying market prices. However, the proposed parametric model focuses on the instantaneous hedging error analysis in a parametric model framework.

In this thesis, we study the discrete option hedging problem by explicitly focusing on the issues arising from model specification errors and calibrated model parameter dependence on underlying. We illustrate that the inability to minimize variance of the hedging error, when determining hedging position from option value function from a parametric model, is also shared by an option model estimated from a nonparametric method. Although a nonparametric modeling approach to option value can potentially lead to smaller mis-specification error, we illustrate that non-parametric model parameters can similarly depend on the underlying. Consequently the sensitivity of the estimated option value function will not lead to minimization of option hedging risk. Furthermore, the estimated pricing function inevitably has errors, due to both model mis-specification, discretization, and numerical roundoff errors. The error in the value function can potentially be substantially magnified in computing partial derivatives as hedging positions.

We explore several direct market data-driven approaches to bypass the challenges mentioned above to achieve effective hedging performance. We first propose a data-driven kernel learning approach [131] to learn a local risk minimization hedging model directly from the market data observed at the hedging time  $t$ . We learn a hedging function from the market data by minimizing the empirical local hedging risk with a suitable regularization. The local risk corresponds directly to the variance of the hedging error in the discrete rebalancing period. A novel encoder-decoder RNN model  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  [132], to extract both sequential and local features at hedging time  $t$  from market prices, is also proposed to learn option hedging positions directly from the market. We include a feature weighting procedure to select the most relevant local features at hedging time  $t$  and sequential features for the sequential data-driven model  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ . Lastly, in order to deal with multi-steps discrete total hedging scenarios where we hedge until the expiry of the option [133], we extend our sequential local hedging model  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  to be  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$ . We compared our data-driven approaches with the parametric approaches and demonstrate the effectiveness of the data-driven hedging models in terms of both local hedging risk and total hedging risk.

## 1.1 Contribution

The contributions with respect to the data-driven kernel hedging model [131] are summarized below:

- We analyze and discuss the implications from model mis-specification in the option value function for discrete option hedging. We illustrate challenges in accounting for the dependence of the calibrated model parameters on the underlying, which arises due to model mis-specification.
- We analyze a regularized kernel network for option value estimation and illustrate that the partial derivative of the estimated value function with respect to the underlying similarly does not minimize the variance of the local hedging risk in general, even not infinitesimally.
- We propose a data-driven approach to learn a hedging position function directly by minimizing the variance of the local hedging risk. Specifically we implement a regularized

spline kernel method  $DKL_{SPL}$  to nonparametrically estimate the hedging function from the market data.

- Using synthetic data sets, we compare daily, weekly, and monthly hedging performance using the kernel direct data-driven hedging approach with the performance of the indirect approach where hedging positions are computed from the sensitivity of the nonparametric option value function. In particular, we present computational results which demonstrate that the direct spline kernel hedging position learning outperforms the hedging position computed from the sensitivity of the spline kernel option value function.
- Using S&P 500 index option market data for more than a decade ending in August 31, 2015, we demonstrate that the daily hedging performance of the direct spline kernel hedging function learning method surpasses that of the minimum variance quadratic hedging formula proposed in [102], as well as corrective methods based on LVF and SABR implemented in [102].
- We also present weekly and monthly hedging results using the S&P 500 index option market data and demonstrate significant enhanced performance over the BS implied volatility hedging.

The contributions with respect to the data-driven hedging model with sequential features [132] are summarized below:

- We propose a novel encoder-decoder RNN model, to extract both sequential and current features from market prices, and to learn option hedging positions directly from the market. We include a feature weighting procedure to select the most relevant local features and sequential time series features for the data-driven model.
- To ensure robust learning, we use the Huber loss function as the learning objective, adaptively setting the error resolution parameter to the Black–Scholes hedging error, allowing it to vary from data instance to data instance. Furthermore, the proposed  $GRU_{\delta}$  can be updated more frequently than the data-driven model in [131] to account for the market shifts.
- Using the S&P 500 index option market data from January 2, 2004 to August 31st, 2015, we demonstrate that the weekly and monthly hedging performance of the proposed  $GRU_{\delta}$  significantly surpasses that of the data-driven minimum variance (MV) method in [102], the regularized kernel data-driven model [131], and the SABR-Bartlett method [15].
- Using the S&P 500 index option market data from January 2, 2004 to August 31st, 2015, we demonstrate that the daily hedging performance of the proposed  $GRU_{\delta}$  surpasses that of the minimum variance quadratic hedging method proposed in [102], the corrective methods based on LVF and SABR implemented in [102], the SABR-Bartlett method [15], as well as the data-driven model in [131].

- To motivate the roles of each major component of the proposed  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ , we demonstrate performance sensitivity through computational experiments. In addition, we illustrate and analyze the relative importance of selected features.

The contributions with respect to the data-driven total hedging model [133] are summarized below:

- We extend the data-driven local hedging model  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  [132] to cope with total risk hedging where we rebalance multiple times until the expiries of the options.
- We augment the market data using SABR model and local volatility model to cope with the challenges of lacking market option data.
- Using the S&P 500 index call option market data from January 1, 2000 to August 31st, 2015, we demonstrate the effectiveness on weekly and monthly hedging performance of the proposed total hedging model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$ . We compare  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  with the sequential data-driven local hedging model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{LOCAL}}$ , which adopts the same model structure but is trained with a different objective functions, the BS delta hedging model and the SABR-Bartlett method [15]. The hedging performance is evaluated on the expiries of options. Additionally, we compare different hedging strategies on the effectiveness in reducing tail risk at either sell-side or buy-side of the option trading.

## 1.2 Outline

The remainder of the thesis is organized as follows. Chapter 2 reviews existing derivative pricing models, discrete hedging problems, local and total hedging risk and various existing parametric approaches to hedge options. Chapter 3 discusses the kernel learning framework and introduces the data-driven kernel local hedging model  $\text{DKL}_{\text{SPL}}$ . Chapter 4 discusses the Recurrent Neural Network(RNN) framework and introduces the data-driven sequential local hedging model  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ . Chapter 5 discusses the empirical results from the data-driven sequential local hedging model  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  and data-driven kernel local hedging model  $\text{DKL}_{\text{SPL}}$ .

Chapter 6 introduces the data-driven total hedging model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  and presents the empirical comparisons between local hedging model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{LOCAL}}$  and total hedging model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$ . Chapter 6 also discusses the challenges of using market data to build data-driven total hedging models and the data augmentation procedure to cope with the challenges. We conclude in Chapter 7 with summary remarks and potential extensions.

# Chapter 2

## Option Hedging: From Past to Present

In this chapter, we review the existing option pricing models and discuss the problem of pricing model parameters dependence on underlying asset. In addition, we specify the discrete hedging problem and define the total and local hedging risk. Most of the discussion in this chapter are drawn from [151, 93, 15, 88, 89].

### 2.1 Discrete Hedging Problem

A European style call or put option gives its buyer the right to buy the underlying asset on the option expiry with a strike price. Let the strike price be  $K$  and the  $S_T$  be the underlying price at expiry  $T$ . The payoff of call options is:

$$\max(S_T - K, 0).$$

The payoff of put options is:

$$\max(K - S_T, 0).$$

When a market is complete, e.g., in the Black–Scholes framework, the option payoff can be perfectly replicated by continuously trading the underlying asset and a risk-free bank account. However, markets are incomplete in practice and the risk associated with options cannot be eliminated completely. On the other hand, reducing risk as much as possible remains the main goal of hedging.

In an incomplete market, risk minimization is not completely defined until one specifies how to measure risk [69, 70, 149, 61]. For European options, a pricing measure can be determined through quadratic risk minimization, see, e.g., [150, 149, 44]. In this framework risk is measured by the expected quadratic difference between the payoff of an option and the value of a self-financing hedging portfolio at expiry date. This is the key idea behind total risk minimization. However, this strategy may not always exist and may be difficult to compute, particularly under more complex asset price dynamics[42, 43].

An alternative to total risk minimization is local risk minimization. In contrast to total risk minimization, in local risk minimization the expected quadratic incremental cost is minimized. As can be seen for European options [42] and American options [43], optimal local risk minimization hedging strategies typically lead to a small total risk. Moreover, it has been shown that the choice of measure for incremental cost is important when the market is highly incomplete, e.g., [42, 43].

Literature in risk minimization pricing and hedging has focused on assuming a parametric form of the underlying asset dynamics. For example, in [42, 43], the underlying asset price is assumed to follow a geometric Brownian motion:

$$dS_t = \mu S_t dt + \sigma S_t dW_t.$$

and the derivation of the hedging position is based on a binomial model. The key distinction between our work and the previous work on local and total risk minimization is that we have no assumption on the underlying asset price dynamics and therefore our models are not bound with a specific parametric form.

In this thesis, we propose to learn discrete data-driven hedging position for standard european options, calls or puts, based on observations of the option market prices on the same underlying price at a set of trading times. The goal of the data-driven discrete option hedging in this thesis is to learn a hedging position  $\delta$  in the underlying dynamically to minimize certain appropriate measurements of the hedging risk on the historical market data and then apply the model on the unobserved testing cases. We are interested in two different types of hedging risk:

- Discrete local hedging risk
- Discrete total hedging risk

Note that in this thesis, the empirical performance of an option hedging method are measured by real market option and underlying prices. The definition of the discrete local hedging risk and discrete total hedging risk are explained in the following subsections.

### 2.1.1 Discrete Local Hedging Risk

Let  $\Delta t$  denote the fixed time interval. Each observation of a market option price  $V_{t,T,K}^{mkt}$  is uniquely associated with a triplet  $\{t, T, K\}$ , where  $t$  is the trading time of the option price,  $K$  is the strike, and expiry  $T$ . Denote:

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta V_{t,T,K}^{mkt} &= V_{t+\Delta t,T,K}^{mkt} - V_{t,T,K}^{mkt} \\ \Delta S_t &= S_{t+\Delta t} - S_t. \end{aligned} \tag{2.1.1}$$

The discrete local hedging risk in the rebalancing interval  $\Delta t$  is:

$$\text{Risk}_{t,T,K}^{local} = \Delta S_t \delta_{t,T,K} - \Delta V_{t,T,K}^{mkt} \tag{2.1.2}$$

where  $\delta_{t,T,K}$  is a hedging position for the corresponding option.

The discrete local hedging risk can be understood as the following. We set up the following portfolio at time  $t$ :

- A short position on option  $V_{t,T,K}^{mkt}$
- Long  $\delta_{t,T,K}$  shares of  $S_t$
- An amount in risk-free bank account  $B_t$

The bank account at time  $t$  is set to be:

$$B_t = V_{t,T,K}^{mkt} - S_t \delta_{t,T,K}.$$

We use  $P_{t,T,K}^H$  to denote the hedging portfolio value at  $t$  for hedging options with expiry  $T$  and strike  $K$ . The hedging portfolio value is set to be zero by choosing  $B_t$ :

$$P_{t,T,K}^H = -V_{t,T,K}^{mkt} + S_t \delta_{t,T,K} + B_t = 0.$$

Let  $dV_{t,T,K}^{mkt}$ ,  $dS_t$ ,  $dB_t$ , and  $dP_{t,T,K}^H$  denote the instantaneous change in the market option price, the underlying price, bank account and the hedging portfolio value respectively, the instantaneous hedging risk at time  $t$  is therefore:

$$dP_{t,T,K}^H = dS_t \delta_{t,T,K} - dV_{t,T,K}^{mkt} + dB_t. \quad (2.1.3)$$

Note that  $dB_t$  is deterministic when we assume  $r$  is a constant:

$$dB_t = rB_t dt$$

Therefore, if we assume the risk-free interest rate is zero (or omit  $dB_t$  since it is deterministic), we have:

$$dP_{t,T,K}^H = dS_t \delta_{t,T,K} - dV_{t,T,K}^{mkt}. \quad (2.1.4)$$

Under the assumption of a complete market where continuous hedging is feasible, the randomness in this instantaneous hedging risk can theoretically be eliminated by continuously trading the underlying asset and set  $\delta_{t,T,K} = \frac{dV_{t,T,K}^{mkt}}{dS_t}$ . However in practice, market is incomplete, therefore hedging can only be done at discrete times. Besides additional risk, e.g., jump and volatility, cannot be eliminated by trading the underlying asset only [93, 75]. Therefore, the hedging risk cannot be eliminated even instantaneously.

In practice, one actually care about the portfolio changes after a discrete time interval  $\Delta t$ . After the fixed interval  $\Delta t$  and assuming the interest rate is zero, we have:

$$\Delta P_{t,T,K}^H = P_{t+\Delta t,T,K}^H - P_{t,T,K}^H = \Delta S_t \delta_{t,T,K} - \Delta V_{t,T,K}^{mkt}. \quad (2.1.5)$$



The local hedging risk is therefore defined to be the one-step hedging error when we assume the risk-free interest rate is zero. The local discrete hedging risk (2.1.2) measures the changes in the hedging portfolio after a fixed time interval  $\Delta t$  when the hedging position is set to be  $\delta_{t,T,K}$ . As  $\Delta t \rightarrow 0$ , we also have local hedging risk converge to instantaneous hedging risk. In other words,

$$\Delta S_t \delta_{t,T,K} - \Delta V_{t,K,T}^{mkt} \rightarrow dS_t \delta_{t,T,K} - dV_{t,T,K}^{mkt}, \text{ as } \Delta t \rightarrow 0.$$

## 2.1.2 Discrete Total Hedging Risk

In reality, one usually want to hedge until the expiries of the options, which requires re-balancing the hedging portfolio multiple times. Again, consider a hedging portfolio  $P_{t,T,K}^H$  which is composed of:

- A short position on option  $V_{t,T,K}^{mkt}$
- Long  $\delta_{t,T,K}$  (hedging position) shares of  $S_t$
- An amount in a risk-free bank account  $B_t$

For the notational simplicity since the  $T$  and  $K$  are fixed in following discussion, we drop them in the subscript:

$$V_t^{mkt} = V_{t,T,K}^{mkt}, \delta_t = \delta_{t,T,K}, P_t^H = P_{t,T,K}^H.$$

Assume we rebalance  $N_{rb}$  times. The hedging portfolio is rebalanced at discrete times  $\{t_0, t_1, \dots, t_{N_{rb}-1}\}$ . Initially at  $t_0$ , we have

$$P_{t_0}^H = -V_{t_0}^{mkt} + \delta_{t_0} S_{t_0} + B_{t_0} = 0$$

And

$$B_{t_0} = V_{t_0}^{mkt} - \delta_{t_0} S_{t_0}$$

At each rebalancing time  $t_j$ , we update our hedging position by changing the share we hold from  $\delta_{t_{j-1}}$  to  $\delta_{t_j}$  at  $t_j$ , where any required cash is borrowed, and any excess cash is loaned. Assume  $\Delta t = t_j - t_{j-1}$  is fixed and risk-free interest rate is zero. The bank account is updated by:

$$B_{t_j} = B_{t_{j-1}} - S_{t_j}(\delta_{t_j} - \delta_{t_{j-1}})$$

Let  $t_j^+$  and  $t_j^-$  be the time immediately after and immediately before  $t_j$ . Assume that the performance is measured at the  $t_{N_{rb}}^-$ , where  $t_{N_{rb}} = T$  is the expiry:

$$\begin{aligned} P_{t_{N_{rb}}}^- &= B_{t_{N_{rb}-1}} - V_{t_{N_{rb}}}^{mkt} + S_{t_{N_{rb}}} \delta_{t_{N_{rb}-1}} \\ &= \sum_{j=0}^{N_{rb}-1} \{ (S_{t_{j+1}} - S_{t_j}) \delta_{t_j} \} + V_{t_0}^{mkt} - V_{t_{N_{rb}}}^{mkt} \\ &= \sum_{j=0}^{N_{rb}-1} \{ (S_{t_{j+1}} - S_{t_j}) \delta_{t_j} - (V_{t_{j+1}}^{mkt} - V_{t_j}^{mkt}) \} \end{aligned} \tag{2.1.6}$$

Equation (2.1.6) is defined as the *discrete total hedging risk*. If we always set  $\delta_t = \frac{dV_t^{mkt}}{dS_t}$  and let  $\Delta t \rightarrow 0$  (we continuously rebalance the portfolio), then  $P_{t_{N_{rb}}}^- = 0$ . In reality, even if we can set the hedging position to be  $\delta_t = \frac{dV_t^{mkt}}{dS_t}$ , we can only rebalance discretely due to the existence of transaction cost. Thus,  $P_{t_{N_{rb}}}^-$  can take positive (profit) and negative value (loss). The *discrete total hedging risk* measures the hedging portfolio profit and loss at the expiry  $T$ .

Equation (2.1.6) can be written as:

$$\begin{aligned} P_{t_{N_{rb}}}^H &= \sum_{j=0}^{N_{rb}-1} \left\{ (S_{t_{j+1}} - S_{t_j}) \delta_{t_j} - (V_{t_{j+1}}^{mkt} - V_{t_j}^{mkt}) \right\} \\ &= \sum_{j=0}^{N_{rb}-1} \left\{ \Delta S_{t_j} \delta_{t_j} - \Delta V_{t_j}^{mkt} \right\} \end{aligned}$$

with  $\Delta V_{t_j}^{mkt}$  and  $\Delta S_{t_j}$  given in (2.1.1).

Plugging in the  $T$  and  $K$  into the subscript, we denote the discrete total hedging risk as:

$$\text{Risk}_{T,K}^{total} = \sum_{j=0}^{N_{rb}-1} \left\{ \Delta S_{t_j} \delta_{t_j,T,K} - \Delta V_{t_j,T,K}^{mkt} \right\} = \sum_{j=0}^{N_{rb}-1} \text{Risk}_{t_j,T,K}^{local} \quad (2.1.7)$$

which corresponding to the hedging portfolio value at the expiry  $T$ . By comparing equation (2.1.2) and (2.1.7), we can see that the *discrete total hedging risk* is the summation of the *discrete local hedging risk* evaluated at discrete rebalancing time  $\{t_0, t_1, \dots, t_{N_{rb}-1}\}$ .

### 2.1.3 Interest Rate and Dividend

In the previous discussion, we assume zero interest rate when we define the *discrete total hedging risk* and the *discrete local hedging risk*. The zero interest rate was assumed when measuring the hedging performance under discrete local hedging risk framework. The results presented [131] and [132] were evaluated from 2007 to 2015 for local hedging risk framework. During most of the time from 2007 and 2015, the interest rate is virtually zero. So the zero interest assumption is valid during most of the time. For the experimental results for total hedging risk in [133], such assumption is relaxed and we include the effect of interest rate since we expand the period of experiments to be from 2000 to 2015. We assume the interest rate is fixed as a constant during the life time of the hedging portfolio and denote it as  $r$ , the discrete total hedging risk is therefore:

$$\text{Risk}_{T,K}^{total} = \sum_{j=0}^{N_{rb}-1} \left\{ \left[ \frac{S_{t_{j+1}}}{D(t_{j+1}, T)} - \frac{S_{t_j}}{D(t_j, T)} \right] \delta_{t_j,T,K}^M \right\} + \frac{V_{t_0,T,K}^{mkt}}{D(t_0, T)} - V_{T,T,K}^{mkt} \quad (2.1.8)$$

where

$$D(t, T) = e^{-r(T-t)}$$

In this thesis, we focus on S&P 500 index option. For S&P 500 index, the closing index price of each day is already adjusted to capture corporate actions that affect market capitalization such as additional share insurance, dividends and restructuring events such as mergers or spin-offs[112]. When we calibrating the option pricing models such as the Black-Scholes model, an estimate of the dividends to be paid up until the expiration of the option are needed. We assume that the index pays dividends continuously, according to a continuously-compounded annual dividend yield  $q$ . Similarly, traditional option pricing models requires a continuously-compounded interest rate as input. This interest rate is calculated from a collection of continuously compounded zero-coupon interest rates at various maturities, collectively referred to as the zero curve.

In this thesis, we use the option market data from OptionMetric [135] database. The OptionMetric [135] database provides us market option quotes for each trading day from 1996-01 to 2015-08-31. We also use the zero curves on each trading day provided by the OptionMetric [135] database to extract the risk-free interest rate  $r$ . The zero curve used by the OptionMetric database is derived from ICE IBA USD LIBOR rates and settlement prices of CME Eurodollar futures. For a given option, the appropriate interest rate input  $r$  for option pricing corresponds to the zero-coupon rate that has a maturity equal to the time to maturity of the option  $T - t$ , and is obtained by linearly interpolating between the two closest zero-coupon rates on the zero curve. In addition, OptionMetric [135] database provides annual dividend yield  $q$  for the S&P 500 index. The  $q$  is recorded daily for the S&P 500 index and supplied as the input for calibrating the option pricing models. Details of how OptionMetric compute the zero curves and the annual dividend yield  $q$  using market data can be found in [135].

## 2.2 Option Pricing Model

### 2.2.1 Black-Scholes Model

Black and Scholes [19] drive the famous closed-form pricing formula for European options. Under Black-Scholes (BS) model, it is assumed that the underlying asset price follows a geometric Brownian motion:

$$dS_t = \mu S_t dt + \sigma S_t dW_t$$

where  $W_t$  is a standard Brownian motion,  $\mu$  is the constant drift rate of the asset and  $\sigma$  is the constant volatility of the asset. We can easily show that:

$$S_t = S_0 e^{(\mu - \frac{\sigma^2}{2})t + \sigma W_t}$$

They show that at any time  $t$  one can construct a riskless portfolio consisting of one option and shares of the underlying asset. The riskless portfolio needs to be continuously adjusted so that the number of shares always equal to the partial derivative of the option pricing function with regards to the underlying asset. No-arbitrage condition implies that the return of the riskless

portfolio must be equal to the risk-free interest rate. This leads to the renowned Black-Scholes (BS) partial differential equation and the closed-form pricing formula.

Let  $C_{BS}$  be the option value function for call option which depends on  $t$  and  $S$ . For notational simplicity, we have:

$$\frac{\partial C_{BS}}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial C_{BS}}{\partial t}(t, S_t), \quad \frac{\partial C_{BS}}{\partial S_t} = \frac{\partial C_{BS}}{\partial S}(t, S_t), \quad \frac{\partial^2 C_{BS}}{\partial S_t^2} = \frac{\partial^2 C_{BS}}{\partial S^2}(t, S_t), \quad C_t^{BS} = C_{BS}(t, S_t)$$

Follows Ito's Lemma [151], we have:

$$dC_t^{BS} = \left( \frac{\partial C_{BS}}{\partial t} + \mu S_t \frac{\partial C_{BS}}{\partial S_t} + \frac{1}{2} \sigma^2 S_t^2 \frac{\partial^2 C_{BS}}{\partial S_t^2} \right) dt + \sigma S_t \frac{\partial C_{BS}}{\partial S_t} dW_t$$

Now consider a specific portfolio, called the delta-hedge portfolio, consisting of being short one call option and long  $\frac{\partial C_{BS}}{\partial S_t}$  shares at time  $t$ . The total value of the delta-hedge portfolio  $P^\delta$  at time  $t$  is:

$$P_t^\delta = -C_t^{BS} + S_t \frac{\partial C_{BS}}{\partial S_t}$$

The instantaneous profit or loss is:

$$dP_t^\delta = - \left( \frac{\partial C_{BS}}{\partial t} + \frac{1}{2} \sigma^2 S_t^2 \frac{\partial^2 C_{BS}}{\partial S_t^2} \right) dt$$

Assume there is a riskless asset with constant rate of return  $r$ , which is also known as risk-free interest rate. We can see that the delta-hedge portfolio  $P_\delta$  is also riskless because the diffusion term associated with  $dW_t$  is dropped. Under no-arbitrage condition, two riskless investment must earn the same rate of return so we must have:

$$dP_t^\delta = r P_t^\delta dt$$

This leads to the Black-Scholes partial differential equation:

$$\frac{\partial C_{BS}}{\partial t} + \frac{1}{2} \sigma^2 S_t^2 \frac{\partial^2 C_{BS}}{\partial S_t^2} + r S_t \frac{\partial C_{BS}}{\partial S_t} - r C_t^{BS} = 0 \quad (2.2.1)$$

The solution with European call option is the well-known Black-Scholes pricing formula:

$$Call = S \mathcal{N}(d_1) - e^{-r(T-t)} K \mathcal{N}(d_2) \quad (2.2.2)$$

where  $\mathcal{N}$  is the cumulative density function of the standard normal distribution

$$d_1 = \frac{\ln(S/K) + (r + \sigma^2/2)(T-t)}{\sigma \sqrt{T-t}}, \quad d_2 = d_1 - \sigma \sqrt{T-t}$$

Similarly, we can derive the Black-Scholes pricing formula for European put option to be:

$$Put = e^{-r(T-t)} K \mathcal{N}(-d_2) - S \mathcal{N}(-d_1) \quad (2.2.3)$$

Alternatively, we can derive the Black-Scholes formula under the risk-neutral pricing framework. As the name suggests, under a risk-neutral measure  $Q$ , all agents in the economy are neutral to risk, so that they are indifferent between investments with different risk as long as these investments have the same expected return. Under a risk-neutral measure, all tradable assets should have the same expected rate of return as the risk-free asset, which earns the risk-free interest rate  $r$ . The derivative price can thus be derived from the expected payoff, discounted back to the current time at the risk-free rate  $r$ . It can be shown that [151], following the Black-Scholes assumption, there is a unique risk-neutral probability measure  $Q$  that is equivalent to the actual physical probability measure. Under risk-neutral pricing framework, we have:

$$Call = e^{-r(T-t)} E^Q[\max(S_T - K, 0)] \quad (2.2.4)$$

$$Put = e^{-r(T-t)} E^Q[\max(K - S_T, 0)] \quad (2.2.5)$$

where  $E^Q[\cdot]$  is the expectation under the risk-neutral measure  $Q$ . More specifically, define  $\Theta_1$  to be the market price of risk:

$$\Theta_1 = \frac{\mu - r}{\sigma} \quad (2.2.6)$$

We change the original Brownian motion  $dW_t$  to  $d\hat{W}_t$  with

$$d\hat{W}_t = dW_t + \Theta_1 dt \quad (2.2.7)$$

The underlying dynamic will have the drift to be the risk-free interest rate  $r$ .

$$dS_t = rS_t dt + \sigma S_t d\hat{W}_t$$

It can be shown that  $d\hat{W}_t$  is the Brownian motion under the risk-neutral measure  $Q$  defined through Radon-Nikodym derivative via Girsanov's theorem [151]. Using the fact that the drift rate of underlying asset dynamic under risk-neutral measure  $Q$  is  $r$ , following (2.2.4) and (2.2.5), we can arrive at the same pricing formula as (2.2.2) and (2.2.3). Interest reader can refer to [151] for more details about risk-neutral pricing and change from physical measure to risk-neutral measure  $Q$ .

Since actual drift  $\mu$  is irrelevant in determining the option price under Black-Scholes framework, in this thesis, we assume we are dealing with risk-neutral measure  $Q$  and the drift of underlying dynamic is always the risk-free interest rate  $r$ . Lastly, to include the effect of dividend, we can rewrite the  $d_1$  and  $d_2$  in the Black-Scholes pricing formula as:

$$d_1 = \frac{\ln(S/K) + ((r - q) + \sigma^2/2)(T - t)}{\sigma\sqrt{T - t}}, \quad d_2 = d_1 - \sigma\sqrt{T - t}$$

where  $q$  is the given annual dividend yield. In this thesis, we use  $V_{BS}(S, t, T, K, r, q; \sigma)$  to denote the European Black-Scholes pricing function regardless of the call or put nature.

Although, Black-Scholes framework provides a nice close-form formula, the real markets are never as ideal as the assumption of Black-Scholes model. Empirical evidence indicates markets often violate the assumption of Black-Scholes model. The two major aspects that has been criticized about Black-Scholes model are:

1. The constant volatility does not hold in real market. In practice, the implied volatility  $\sigma^{imp}$ , which equates the Black-Scholes option price  $V_{BS}(S, t, T, K, r, q; \sigma)$  to market option price  $V_{t, T, K}^{mkt}$ , is often used to make sure that Black-Scholes price match the market observation. However, one can often find that the implied volatility  $\sigma^{imp}$  tends to differ across different strikes and expiries. This breaks down the assumption of a constant volatility
2. Transaction cost exists in real market. Due to the existence of transaction cost, continuously adjusting the shares of underlying can be prohibitively expensive. Therefore, the argument of the Black-Scholes theory falls apart.

The market deviations from the assumption of Black-Scholes model motivates people to propose various approaches for relaxing the assumptions of Black and Scholes. These attempts include, but not limited to, local volatility models [40, 58, 144, 60], stochastic volatility models [89, 93, 101, 12], jump diffusion models [90, 111] and nonparametric pricing models based on regression [170, 16, 84, 73, 119]. In the following section, we discuss two stochastic volatility models relevant to this thesis, Heston model and SABR model, which provide efficient closed-form solutions for the option price similar as Black-Scholes model.

### 2.2.2 Heston Model

Heston [93] proposed a version of the stochastic volatility model, which has become quite popular to model the volatility smiles. The volatility smiles refer to the phenomenon that the options in real market whose strike prices differ substantially from the underlying asset price tend to have higher implied volatilities than options whose strike prices are close to the underlying asset price under Black-Scholes models. One of the key reason for its popularity is that European call and put option under Heston model have closed-form solution which makes the calibration of the model computationally efficient and accurate. The Heston model assumes that the underlying,  $S_t$  follows a Black-Scholes type stochastic process, but with a stochastic variance  $v_t$  that follows a Cox, Ingersoll, Ross (CIR) process [49].

$$\begin{aligned} dS_t &= \mu S_t dt + \sqrt{v_t} S_t dW_t \\ dv_t &= \kappa(\bar{v} - v_t) dt + \eta \sqrt{v_t} dZ_t \\ E[dZ_t dW_t] &= \rho dt \end{aligned}$$

These parameters are described as follows:

- $\mu$  is the drift coefficient of the underlying asset
- $\bar{v}$  is the long term mean of variance
- $\kappa$  is the rate of mean reversion
- $\eta$  is the volatility of volatility
- $S_t$  is the underlying asset price
- $v_t$  is the instantaneous variance
- $W_t$  and  $Z_t$  are correlated Wiener process with correlation coefficient  $\rho$

Similarly, the Heston dynamics can be transformed to be under a risk-neutral measure  $Q$ . Heston [93] assumes that the market price of volatility risk is proportional to the volatility  $\sqrt{v_t}$ :

$$\Theta_2 = \frac{\lambda}{\eta} \sqrt{v_t} \quad (2.2.8)$$

$\lambda$  is a parameter used to generate the market price of volatility risk. Recall that market price of risk is:

$$\Theta_1 = \frac{\mu - r}{\sqrt{v_t}}$$

It can be shown that a risk-neutral measure  $Q$  can be defined through Radon-Nikodym derivative via Multi-dimensional Girsanov's theorem [151] using the  $\Theta_1$  and  $\Theta_2$ .

Therefore, Heston model under a risk-neutral measure  $Q$  is:

$$\begin{aligned} dS &= rSdt + \sqrt{v}Sd\hat{W} \\ dv &= \kappa^*(\bar{v}^* - v)dt + \eta\sqrt{v}d\hat{Z} \\ E[d\hat{Z}d\hat{W}] &= \rho dt \end{aligned} \quad (2.2.9)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \kappa^* &= \kappa + \lambda, \bar{v}^* = \frac{\kappa\bar{v}}{\kappa + \lambda} \\ d\hat{W} &= dW + \Theta_1 dt \\ d\hat{Z} &= dZ + \Theta_2 dt \end{aligned}$$

Similar to Black-Scholes model, Heston model have closed-form solutions. The closed formed solution for European call option under the risk-neutral measure  $Q$  is

$$Call = S N_1 - Ke^{-r(T-t)} N_2 \quad (2.2.10)$$

Let us define the imaginary unit  $\mathcal{J}^2 = -1$ . Then the  $N_1$  and  $N_2$  are defined as:

$$N_j = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^\infty \operatorname{Re} \left[ \frac{e^{-\mathcal{J} \varphi \ln K} f_j(S, v, t, T; \varphi)}{\mathcal{J} \varphi} \right] d\varphi; \quad j = 1, 2$$

with  $\operatorname{Re}[\cdot]$  denoting the real part. The characteristic function  $f_j(S, v, t, T; \varphi)$  is :

$$f_j(S, v, t, T; \varphi) = e^{A_j(t, T, \varphi) + B_j(t, T, \varphi)v + \mathcal{J} \varphi \ln S}, \quad j = 1, 2$$

Where:

$$\begin{aligned} A_j(t, T, \varphi) &= r\varphi(T-t) + \frac{\kappa^* \bar{v}^*}{\eta^2} \left\{ (b_j - \rho \eta \varphi \mathcal{J} + d_j)(T-t) - 2 \ln \left[ \frac{1 - g_j e_j^d(T-t)}{1 - g_j} \right] \right\} \\ B_j(t, T, \varphi) &= g_j \left[ \frac{1 - e_j^d(T-t)}{1 - g_j e_j^d(T-t)} \right] \\ g_j &= \frac{b_j - \rho \varphi \mathcal{J} + d_j}{b_j - \rho \varphi \mathcal{J} - d_j} \\ d_j &= \sqrt{(\rho \eta \varphi \mathcal{J} - b_j)^2 - \eta^2 (2u_j \varphi - \varphi^2)} \\ u_1 &= 0.5, u_2 = -0.5, b_1 = \kappa^* - \rho v, b_2 = \kappa^* \end{aligned}$$

European put option price can be derived from the call-put parity:

$$Put = Call - S + K e^{-r(T-t)}$$

The parameters to be calibrated from the market option prices are  $\{v, \kappa^*, \bar{v}^*, \eta, \rho\}$  where  $v$  is the initial instantaneous variance,  $\bar{v}^*$  is the long term mean of variance under risk-neutral measurement  $Q$ ,  $\kappa^*$  is the rate of mean reversion under risk-neutral measurement  $Q$ ,  $\eta$  is the volatility of volatility, and  $\rho$  is correlation.

Under Black-Scholes model, an option is dependent on tradable asset  $S_t$ . The randomness in option value is solely determined by the randomness of the asset  $S_t$ . Such uncertainty can be hedged by continuously adjusting the shares of underlying asset as we have discussed in section 2.2.1. This implies a complete market [151]. Under a stochastic volatility model such as Heston model, the uncertainty of option value comes from both the underlying asset  $S_t$  and the volatility (or variance  $v_t$  as in Heston model). The volatility itself is not tradable which implies an incomplete market under stochastic volatility model. The incompleteness implies the risk-neutral measure is not unique. In other words,  $\lambda$  is not unique. Different choices of  $\lambda$  will lead to different risk-neutral measurements. However, one can assume a risk-neutral measure  $Q$  exists and calibrate the Heston model to match the the market option prices directly using the dynamics in (2.2.9) without specifying the  $\lambda$ . In this way,  $\lambda$  has been implied and embedded into the calibrated model parameters  $\kappa^*$  and  $\bar{v}^*$ . Interested reader can refer to [93, 75] for more details of risk-neutral pricing under Heston model.



Again, given the annual dividend yield  $q$ , the above heston pricing formula can be rewritten as:

$$Call = Se^{-q(T-t)} N_1 - Ke^{-r(T-t)} N_2$$

$$N_j = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^\infty Re \left[ \frac{e^{-\mathcal{J}\varphi \ln K} f_j(S, v, t, T; \varphi)}{\mathcal{J}\varphi} \right] d\varphi; \quad j = 1, 2$$

with  $Re[\cdot]$  denoting the real part. The characteristic function  $f_j(S, v, t, T; \varphi)$  is :

$$f_j(S, v, t, T; \varphi) = e^{A_j(t, T, \varphi) + B_j(t, T, \varphi)v + \mathcal{J}\varphi \ln S}, j = 1, 2$$

Where:

$$A_j(t, T, \varphi) = (r - q)\varphi(T - t) + \frac{\kappa^* \bar{v}^*}{\eta^2} \left\{ (b_j - \rho\eta\varphi\mathcal{J} + d_j)(T - t) - 2 \ln \left[ \frac{1 - g_j e_j^d(T - t)}{1 - g_j} \right] \right\}$$

$$B_j(t, T, \varphi) = g_j \left[ \frac{1 - e_j^d(T - t)}{1 - g_j e_j^d(T - t)} \right]$$

$$g_j = \frac{b_j - \rho\varphi\mathcal{J} + d_j}{b_j - \rho\varphi\mathcal{J} - d_j}$$

$$d_j = \sqrt{(\rho\eta\varphi\mathcal{J} - b_j)^2 - \eta^2(2u_j\varphi - \varphi^2)}$$

$$u_1 = 0.5, u_2 = -0.5, b_1 = \kappa^* - \rho v, b_2 = \kappa^*$$

European put option price can be derived from the call-put parity:

$$Put = Call - Se^{-q(T-t)} + Ke^{-r(T-t)}$$

In this thesis, we deal with Heston model under the risk-neutral measurement  $Q$ . For simplicity, in this thesis, we use  $V_{Heston}(S, t, T, K, r, q; v, \kappa^*, \bar{v}^*, \eta, \rho)$  to denote the European Heston pricing function regardless of the call or put nature.

### 2.2.3 SABR Model

The SABR model [89] is another stochastic volatility model, which attempts to capture the volatility smiles in derivatives markets. The name stands for "Stochastic Alpha, Beta, Rho", referring to the parameters of the model. The SABR model is another popular stochastic volatility model widely used in financial risk management. Its popularity is due to the fact that it can reproduce comparatively well the market-observed volatility smile and that it provides a closed-form formula for the volatility. Given the risk-free interest rate  $r$ , the annual dividend yield  $q$ , and the forward  $F_t$  with expiry  $T$  is:

$$F_t = S_t e^{(r-q)(T-t)}$$

In the SABR stochastic volatility model, the forward  $F_t$  price follows the following stochastic differential equation:

$$\begin{aligned} dF_t &= \alpha_t (F_t)^\beta dW_t \\ d\alpha_t &= \nu \alpha_t dZ_t \\ E[dW_t dZ_t] &= \rho dt \end{aligned}$$

These parameters are described as follows:

- $\alpha_t$  is the instantaneous volatility of the forward  $F_t$ .
- $\nu$  is the volatility of instantaneous volatility  $\alpha_t$ .
- $W_t$  and  $Z_t$  are correlated Wiener process with correlation coefficient  $\rho$

A variant of the Black–Scholes option pricing model, Black model [18], is often used together with SABR model. Under Black model, the forward  $F_t$  price follows the following stochastic differential equation:

$$dF_t = \sigma_B F_t dW_t$$

where  $\sigma_B$  is the volatility. We use  $V_B(F, K, r, t, T; \sigma_B)$  to denote the Black pricing function. For European call option:

$$V_B(F, t, T, K, r; \sigma_B) = e^{-r(T-t)} [F \mathcal{N}(d_3) - K \mathcal{N}(d_4)]$$

For European put option:

$$V_B(F, t, T, K, r; \sigma_B) = e^{-r(T-t)} [K \mathcal{N}(-d_4) - F \mathcal{N}(-d_3)]$$

where  $\mathcal{N}$  is the cumulative density function of standard normal distribution

$$d_3 = \frac{\ln(F/K) + \sigma^2/2(T-t)}{\sigma\sqrt{T-t}}, \quad d_4 = d_3 - \sigma\sqrt{T-t}$$

Consider an option on the forward  $F$  with expiry  $T$  and strike  $K$  at time  $t$ . If we force the SABR model price of the option into the form of the Black model valuation formula. Then the SABR implied volatility, which is the value of the  $\sigma_B$  in Black's model that forces it to match the SABR price, is approximately given by:

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_B(F, t, T, K; \alpha, \beta, \nu, \rho) \approx & \frac{\alpha}{(FK)^{(1-\beta)/2} \left[ 1 + \frac{(1-\beta)^2}{24} \log^2(F/K) + \frac{(1-\beta)^4}{1920} \log^4(F/K) + \dots \right]} \cdot \frac{z}{x(z)} \\ & \cdot \left\{ 1 + \left[ \frac{(1-\beta)^2}{24} \frac{\alpha^2}{(FK)^{1-\beta}} + \frac{1}{4} \frac{\rho\beta\nu\alpha}{(FK)^{(1-\beta)/2}} + \frac{2-3\rho^2}{24} \nu^2 \right] (T-t) + \dots \right\} \end{aligned}$$

where

$$z = \frac{\nu}{\alpha} (FK)^{(1-\beta)/2} \log(F/K), \quad x(z) = \log \left\{ \frac{\sqrt{1 - 2\rho z + z^2} + z - \rho}{1 - \rho} \right\}$$

For the special case of at-the-money options, options struck at  $K = F$ , this formula reduces to

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_{ATM} &= \sigma_B(F, t, T, F; \alpha, \beta, \nu, \rho) \\ &\approx \frac{\alpha}{F^{(1-\beta)}} \left\{ 1 + \left[ \frac{(1-\beta)^2}{24} \frac{\alpha^2}{F^{2-2\beta}} + \frac{1}{4} \frac{\rho\beta\alpha\nu}{F^{(1-\beta)}} + \frac{2-3\rho^2}{24} \nu^2 \right] (T-t) + \dots \right\} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the European option value under SABR model is given by:

$$V_{SABR} = V_B(F, t, T, K, r; \sigma_B(F, t, T, K; \alpha, \beta, \nu, \rho))$$

The  $\sigma_B(F, t, T, K; \alpha, \beta, \nu, \rho)$  under SABR model depends on the forward  $F$ , the strike  $K$ , the time to expiry  $T - t$ , the initial SABR volatility  $\alpha$ , the power of forward  $\beta$ , the volatility of volatility  $\nu$ , and the correlation  $\rho$ . Interested readers can refer to [89] for the detailed derivation of the analytical approximation  $\sigma_B(F, t, T, K; \alpha, \beta, \nu, \rho)$ . We use  $V_{SABR}(S, t, T, K, r, q; \alpha, \beta, \nu, \rho)$  to denote the option pricing formula under SABR model regardless of the call and put nature in the latter discussion.

## 2.3 Option Hedging Using the Sensitivity from Pricing Model

In this section, we discuss how we can compute the hedging position  $\delta_{t,T,K}$  from the option pricing model, and the drawbacks of this approach. Specifically, we discuss the pricing model parameters dependence issue, which motivates our data-driven model, and provide several existing ways for correcting the model parameter dependence.

### 2.3.1 Classical Hedging Position From Pricing Model

In section 2.2, we have introduced several option pricing models with analytical pricing formula. Let  $V(S, t, T, K, r, q; \theta)$  denote the arbitrary option pricing model. For Black-Scholes Model,  $\theta$  is the volatility  $\sigma$ . For Heston model,  $\theta = \{\nu, \kappa^*, \bar{\nu}^*, \eta, \rho\}$ . For SABR model,  $\theta = \{\alpha, \beta, \nu, \rho\}$ .<sup>1</sup> We want to calibrate the pricing model to match the market option quotes.

On each trading time  $t$ , we have observed market option prices for different strikes  $\{K_1, \dots, K_{N_k}\}$  and different expiries  $\{T_1, \dots, T_{N_T}\}$ , where  $N_k$  is the number of strikes and  $N_T$  is the number of expiries. Further assume the risk-free interest rate and annual dividend yield are given as  $r$  and

<sup>1</sup>Note that, Studies [102, 89, 88] shows that  $\beta$  can often be fixed a priori. In this case,  $\theta = \{\alpha, \nu, \rho\}$ .

$q$ . The underlying asset price is  $S_t$ . The calibration can be done by:

$$\min_{\theta} \sum_{i=1}^{N_T} \sum_{j=1}^{N_K} \left( V(S_t, t, T_i, K_j, r, q; \theta) - V^{mkt}(t, T_i, K_j) \right)^2$$

For Black-Scholes model, there is only one parameter to be calibrated, so one can usually find that a constant volatility cannot match all market option quotes very well. Alternatively, one can match each market quotes exactly by:

$$V_{BS}(S_t, t, T_i, K_j, r, q; \sigma_{t, T_i, K_j}^{imp}) = V^{mkt}(t, T_i, K_j)$$

The volatility  $\sigma_{t, T_i, K_j}^{imp}$  that equals the Black-Scholes price with the market option price is called **Black-Scholes implied volatility**. (In section 2.2.3, we have introduced a term called SABR implied volatility which equals the SABR model price with the Black model price. The SABR implied volatility and Black-Scholes implied volatility are two different but related terminologies.) Note that in this way, for different options  $V^{mkt}(t, T_i, K_j)$ , different models are calibrated. One can often find that the implied volatility  $\sigma^{imp}$  tends to differ across different strikes and expiries.

Alternatively, for stochastic volatility models such as Heston and SABR, the calibration is usually done by matching the volatility smile instead of the entire volatility surface [93, 89, 102]. In other words, for a fixed expiry  $T_i$ , we solve

$$\min_{\theta} \sum_{j=1}^{N_K} \left( V(S_t, t, T_i, K_j, r, q; \theta) - V^{mkt}(t, T_i, K_j) \right)^2$$

Note that in this way, pricing models are calibrated separately for different expiries  $T_i$  on the same trading date  $t$ .

Given the option pricing model  $V(S, t, T, K, r, q; \theta^*)$  with the calibrated  $\theta^*$ , the hedging position is commonly determined by:

$$\delta_{t, T, K} = \frac{\partial V(S, t, T, K, r, q; \theta^*)}{\partial S}$$

Although a more complex option pricing model such as stochastic volatility models can match the market quotes better and account for the volatility smiles better, it does not necessarily lead to better hedging strategy. Several studies [58, 12, 176, 112] detail the hedging performances of option pricing models and show that, while explicitly modelling volatility smile substantially improves the pricing accuracy, it frequently decreases the hedging performance compared to the simpler Black-Scholes models. A recent empirical study [112] demonstrates that, for hedging S&P 500 index options, the simple Black-Scholes model with a constant volatility calibrated on each trading date can even outperform complex stochastic volatility models such as Heston model [93] and Heston-Nandi model [94]. The phenomenon where better pricing model leads to

worse hedging performance is refer to as pricing/hedging conundrum in [112]. In the following section, we provide one of the potential explanation why such phenomenon exists.

### 2.3.2 Parameter Dependence on Underlying Asset

We notice that determining the hedging position from the partial derivative:

$$\delta_{t,T,K} = \frac{\partial V(S, t, T, K, r, q; \theta^*)}{\partial S}$$

of the calibrated pricing function inevitably leads to incomplete elimination of the underlying sensitivity, even in the context of instantaneous hedging. To see this, let us assume that a pricing model allows matching of the market price  $V^{mkt}$  at  $t$  exactly, i.e.,  $\theta^*$  is determined so that for arbitrary observed  $T$  and  $K$  in market.

$$V(S, t, T, K, r, q; \theta^*) = V^{mkt}(t, T, K) \quad (2.3.1)$$

In general,  $\{t, T, K\}$  do not depend on  $S$ . Let us further assume  $\{r, q\}$  do not depend on  $S$ . Unfortunately, the calibration process inevitably relates  $S$  and  $\theta^*$ . Therefore, we have:

$$\frac{dV}{dS} = \frac{\partial V}{\partial S} + \frac{\partial V}{\partial \theta^*} \frac{\partial \theta^*}{\partial S}$$

Thus, unless one can ensure  $\frac{\partial \theta^*}{\partial S} = 0$ , we will have  $dV - \frac{\partial V}{\partial S} \cdot dS \neq 0$ . Several studies have demonstrate that pricing model parameters can be correlated with the underling asset price, so whenever  $S$  changes, the pricing model parameters should change too. As an example, negative correlation between Black-Scholes implied volatility and underlying asset price has been observed in [71, 21]. Besides, the calibration equation (2.3.1) says little about how the sensitivity  $\frac{dV}{dS}$  matches  $\frac{dV^{mkt}}{dS}$ . Thus, even if we can compute the sensitivity  $\frac{dV}{dS}$  exactly, we generally have:

$$dV^{mkt} - \frac{dV}{dS} \cdot dS \neq 0$$

Even with the perfect case where we can have a pricing model matching all observed market prices, which is often not achievable due to the calibration error, and the unrealistic assumption:

$$\frac{dV^{mkt}}{dS} = \frac{dV}{dS} = \frac{\partial V}{\partial S} + \frac{\partial V}{\partial \theta^*} \frac{\partial \theta^*}{\partial S} \quad (2.3.2)$$

We still have the pricing model parameters dependence issue to be addressed. Since it is difficult to account for parameter dependence  $\frac{\partial \theta^*}{\partial S}$ ,  $\frac{dV^{mkt}}{dS}$  can be hard to be captured accurately. The classical approach of using  $\frac{\partial V}{\partial S}$  as the hedging position does not eliminate the instantaneous hedging risk.

A more complex model usually has more pricing model parameters to be calibrated. The

more parameters there are, the more severe the parameters dependence issue possibly is. That may be one of the reason why many studies observe poorer hedging performance from more complex pricing model than simple Black-Scholes model in real market. Even with the simple Black-Scholes model, the Black–Scholes implied volatility still depends on the underlying asset. In the following section, we introduce several corrections under Black-Scholes framework for the parameter dependence. In addition, complex models like Heston model usually can not match the observed market option prices exactly. The calibration error can also potentially increase the hedging errors when the partial derivative is used as the hedging position.

### 2.3.3 Corrections Under Black-Scholes Framework

Although the issue of pricing model parameters dependence on underlying asset has been noted, e.g., in [40, 102], correcting for this risk exposure is not straightforward. Methods have been proposed to compensate for this missing exposure. Typically methods are based on analysis of some parametric models, e.g., LVF and SV; these methods minimize the variance of the hedging error [102, 3, 6, 7, 83]. In this section, we present several correction methods under Black-Scholes Framework. The discussion below are majorly drawn from [102, 88, 15].

#### A Data-Driven Correction For The Black–Scholes Delta Hedging

Equation (2.3.2) implies that the sensitivity of the option value function  $\frac{\partial V}{\partial S}$  calibrated at the rebalancing time to satisfy the calibration equation (2.3.1) cannot completely hedge the sensitivity of the market option price to the underlying price since  $\frac{\partial \theta^*}{\partial S}$  is not accounted for. If the hedging risk in each rebalancing period is the performance criteria, the information in the option market price change needs to be explicitly incorporated to determine a better hedging method which minimizes the hedge risk as measured by market option price change instead of the model option price change.

If sufficient market option and underlying price data exist, a potentially more effective approach is to learn the hedging strategy based on historical observations of both changes in the market option price and the underlying price. This approach is completely different from the existing parametric underlying price model based hedging methods.

To the best of our knowledge, the study [102] is the first to determine the hedging strategy based on historical observations of the market option prices and underlying prices. This particularly form (2.3.4) is derived based on the following analysis using the Black–Scholes model. More specifically, assume we have calibrate the implied volatilities  $\sigma^{imp}$  to match all the market option quotes as what we have discussed in section 2.3.1. Let us again assume we are computing the hedging position with a fixed  $T$  and  $K$  at a specific trading time  $t$ , so for notational simplicity in the following discussion, we drop  $t, T, K$  in the subscript. Following (2.3.2), to determine the sensitivity  $\frac{dV_{BS}}{dS}$  accurately, one needs to compute

$$\frac{\partial V_{BS}}{\partial S} + \frac{\partial V_{BS}}{\partial \sigma^{imp}} \frac{\partial \sigma^{imp}}{\partial S} \quad (2.3.3)$$

$\frac{\partial V_{BS}}{\partial S}$  is the Black–Scholes delta with implied volatility and  $\frac{\partial V_{BS}}{\partial \sigma^{imp}}$  Black–Scholes vega with implied volatility. Both can be computed analytical. The undetermined part is  $\frac{\partial \sigma^{imp}}{\partial S}$ . In [102], the authors choose

$$\frac{\partial \sigma^{imp}}{\partial S} = \frac{a + b \cdot \frac{\partial V_{BS}}{\partial S} + c \cdot \left(\frac{\partial V_{BS}}{\partial S}\right)^2}{S\sqrt{T-t}}$$

where  $a, b$  and  $c$  are the parameters to be fitted using market option data. Therefore, plug in the notation for  $t, T, K$ , the minimum variance delta is therefore:

$$\delta_{t,T,K}^{MV} = \delta_{t,T,K}^{BS} + \text{vega}_{t,T,K}^{BS} \frac{a + b \cdot \delta_{t,T,K}^{BS} + c \cdot (\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS})^2}{S_t \sqrt{T-t}}, \quad (2.3.4)$$

where  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}$  and  $\text{vega}_{t,T,K}^{BS}$  are respectively the Black–Scholes delta and vega, using the implied volatility at time  $t$  for option with strike  $K$  and expiry  $T$ .

The model parameters  $a, b, c$  are determined using historical observations. Let  $M$  denote the number of historical data instances. Each data instance corresponds to a unique combination of  $\{t, T, K\}$ . For data instance  $i$ , with time  $t_i$ , strike  $K_i$ , and expiry  $T_i$ , we approximate the instantaneous changes in the market option price and underlying price by the **daily** changes of the market option prices and underlying prices:

$$dV_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{mkt} \approx \Delta V_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{mkt}, \quad dS_{t_i} \approx \Delta S_{t_i}$$

Thus, we have the following minimization problem:

$$\min_{a,b,c} \sum_{i=1}^M \left( \Delta S_{t_i} \delta_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{MV} - \Delta V_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{mkt} \right)^2$$

A linear regression is performed to determine the model parameters  $a, b, c$ .

Consequently, the minimum variance hedging function  $\delta^{MV}$  is computed based on regression estimation, assuming the quadratic parametric model (2.3.4). It has been shown [102] that the corrective formula (2.3.4) can significantly improve the daily hedging performance.

### Correction With LVF Model For The Black–Scholes Delta Hedging

As an improvement over the BS model, the local volatility function (LVF) model,

$$\frac{dS_t}{S_t} = (r - q)dt + \sigma(S_t, t)dW_t \quad (2.3.5)$$

has been considered, see e.g., [59, 52, 53], and LVF and its extensions remain widely popular in practice. Many methods have been proposed to calibrate a local volatility function  $\sigma(S, t)$  from the traded market option prices, see e.g., [105, 4, 39]. In addition, Coleman et al. [40] discuss a relationship between the partial derivatives of calls and puts in the context of the LVF model,

under which a call and put symmetry relation holds, see, e.g., [27, 28]. This relationship is found useful in correcting the dependence of the implied volatility on the underlying for Black–Scholes delta hedging.

In Theorem 2.3.1 below, we formalize this relation [40] to any call and put functions satisfying the call-put-symmetry. We note that, for this relationship to be useful in correcting for MV hedging in practice, hence the relevant price functions correspond to the market option prices, not model option values.

**Theorem 2.3.1.** *Let  $Call(S, t, T, K, r, q)$  and  $Put(S, t, T, K, r, q)$  be the call option price and put option price with underlying price  $S$ , strike  $K$ , expiry  $T$ , time  $t$ , interest rate  $r$  and dividend yield  $q$ . Assume further that there exists a unique implied volatility calibrating to  $Call(S, t, T, K, r, q)$  and  $Put(S, t, T, K, r, q)$  respectively and the call-put-symmetry below holds:*

$$Call(S, t, T, K, r, q) = Put(K, t, T, S, q, r). \quad (2.3.6)$$

Then

$$\frac{\partial \check{\sigma}_c(S, t, T, K, r, q)}{\partial S} = \frac{\partial \check{\sigma}_p(K, t, T, S, q, r)}{\partial S}. \quad (2.3.7)$$

where  $\check{\sigma}_c(\cdot)$  is the BS implied volatility calibrated to  $C(\cdot)$  and  $\check{\sigma}_p(\cdot)$  is the BS implied volatility calibrated to  $P(\cdot)$  respectively.

*Proof.* Let  $C_{BS}(\cdot)$  and  $P_{BS}(\cdot)$  denote the BS model option value functions. Put and call symmetry under the Black-Scholes model implies that

$$C_{BS}(S, t, T, K, r, q; \sigma) = P_{BS}(K, t, T, S, q, r; \sigma), \quad (2.3.8)$$

where  $\sigma$  is any constant volatility. Let  $\check{\sigma}_c(S, t, T, K, r, q)$  and  $\check{\sigma}_p(K, t, T, S, q, r)$  be the Black–Scholes implied volatilities calibrated to  $Call(S, t, T, K, r, q)$  and  $Put(K, t, T, S, q, r)$  Then

$$\begin{aligned} Call(S, t, T, K, r, q) &= C_{BS}(S, t, T, K, r, q; \check{\sigma}_c(S, t, T, K, r, q)) \\ Put(K, t, T, S, q, r) &= P_{BS}(K, t, T, S, q, r; \check{\sigma}_p(K, t, T, S, q, r)). \end{aligned} \quad (2.3.9)$$

From (2.3.6) and above, it follows

$$C_{BS}(S, t, T, K, r, q; \check{\sigma}_c(S, t, T, K, r, q)) = P_{BS}(K, t, T, S, q, r; \check{\sigma}_p(K, t, T, S, q, r)) \quad (2.3.10)$$

Using (2.3.8) with  $\check{\sigma}_c(\cdot)$ ,

$$C_{BS}(S, t, T, K, r, q; \check{\sigma}_c(S, t, T, K, r, q)) = P_{BS}(K, S, T, q, r; \check{\sigma}_c(S, t, T, K, r, q))$$

From above and (2.3.10), it follows

$$P_{BS}(K, S, T, q, r; \check{\sigma}_c(S, t, T, K, r, q)) = P_{BS}(K, t, T, S, q, r; \check{\sigma}_p(K, t, T, S, q, r))$$



Assuming that there is a unique implied volatility from the BS formula, we have

$$\check{\sigma}_c(S, t, T, K, r, q) = \check{\sigma}_p(K, t, T, S, q, r) \quad (2.3.11)$$

Taking derivative with respect to  $S$ , we have

$$\frac{\partial \check{\sigma}_c(S, t, T, K, r, q)}{\partial S} = \frac{\partial \check{\sigma}_p(K, t, T, S, q, r)}{\partial S},$$

i.e., (2.3.7) holds. This completes the proof.  $\square$

Assume that the market option prices satisfy put-call symmetry. Then the relevance of Theorem 2.3.1 in accounting for dependence of the implied volatility on the underlying can be appreciated as follows. On the left hand side of (2.3.7), the derivative is with respect to the underlying price (the first argument). On the right hand side, the derivative is with respect to the strike price (the second argument). When  $q \approx r$  (as in the futures options market),  $\frac{\partial \check{\sigma}_p(K, t, T, S, q, r)}{\partial S}$  can be estimated from the observed implied volatility surface. In other words, for at-the-money with  $K = S$  option, the rate of change in the implied volatility with respect to changes in the underlying price is equal to the slope of the volatility smile. Consequently the sensitivity of the implied volatility to the underlying can be estimated.

Hull and White [102] implement a corrective formula for minimum variance hedging based on (2.3.7), referred to as the LVF minimum variance hedging. Hull and White [102] further assume that the rate of change in the implied volatility with respect to changes in the underlying price is equal to the slope of the volatility smile for options which are not at-the-money. Therefore, the LVF correction is:

$$\delta_{t,T,K}^{LVF} = \delta_{t,T,K}^{BS} + \text{vega}_{t,T,K}^{BS} \frac{\partial \sigma^{imp}}{\partial K} \quad (2.3.12)$$

where  $\frac{\partial \sigma^{imp}}{\partial K}$  can be estimated from the a quadratic function fitting the volatility smile for each expiry. Other minimum variance delta hedge methods have also been proposed to correct practitioner Black–Scholes delta explicitly, see, e.g., [12, 50, 14, 139, 10]. Interested reader can refer to them for more details.

### Correction With SABR model for the the Black–Scholes Delta Hedging

Recall that the SABR implied volatility, which is the value of the  $\sigma_B$  in Black's model that forces it to match the SABR price, is given in section 2.2.3. Based on SARR model, a correction formula for Black delta hedging is thus given by:

$$\frac{\partial V_B}{\partial F} + \frac{\partial V_B}{\partial \sigma_B} \frac{\partial \sigma_B}{\partial F} \quad (2.3.13)$$

Note that, Black delta can be converted to Black–Scholes delta. One can rewrite the formula to compute the sensitivity with regards to underlying asset price  $S$  instead of forward  $F$  by:

$$\left( \frac{\partial V_B}{\partial F} + \frac{\partial V_B}{\partial \sigma_B} \frac{\partial \sigma_B}{\partial F} \right) \frac{dF}{dS} \quad (2.3.14)$$

Given the risk-free interest rate  $r$ , the annual dividend yield  $q$ , and the forward  $F_t$  at time  $t$  with expiry  $T$  is:

$$F_t = S_t e^{(r-q)(T-t)}$$

Plug in the notation for  $t, T, K$  as what we did in previous sections, we have:

$$\delta_{t,T,K}^{SABR} = \left( \delta_{t,T,K}^B + \text{vega}_{t,T,K}^B \frac{\partial \sigma_B}{\partial F} \right) e^{(r-q)(T-t)} \quad (2.3.15)$$

where  $\delta_{t,T,K}^B$  is the Black delta  $\frac{\partial V_B}{\partial F}$  at time  $t$  for option with strike  $K$  and expiry  $T$ .  $\text{vega}_{t,T,K}^B$  is the Black vega  $\frac{\partial V_B}{\partial \sigma_B}$  at time  $t$  for option with strike  $K$  and expiry  $T$ .  $\frac{\partial \sigma_B}{\partial F}$  is the shortened form of  $\frac{\partial \sigma_B(F_t, t, T, K; \alpha, \beta, \nu, \rho)}{\partial F}$ .

Although, SABR model can be used to correct the dependence of implied volatility on the forward price, the formula (2.3.15) omits the fact the initial SABR volatility  $\alpha$  is correlated with the forward  $F$ . So whenever the forward  $F$  changes, the initial SABR volatility  $\alpha$  changes. There is still unaccounted parameter dependence in equation (2.3.15).

Therefore, Bartlett correction [88, 15] was proposed to account for the dependence of  $\alpha$  on  $F$ . The Bartlett correction is based on the following analysis. Recall that, in SABR model we assume:

$$\begin{aligned} dF_t &= \alpha_t (F_t)^\beta dW_t \\ d\alpha_t &= \nu \alpha_t dZ_t \\ E[dW_t dZ_t] &= \rho dt \end{aligned}$$

which can be rewritten as:

$$\begin{aligned} dF_t &= \alpha_t (F_t)^\beta dW_t \\ d\alpha_t &= \nu \alpha_t \left( \rho dW_t + \sqrt{1 - \rho^2} dZ_t \right) = \frac{\rho \nu}{(F_t)^\beta} dF_t + \nu \alpha_t \sqrt{1 - \rho^2} dZ_t \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, one can readily find that:

$$E \left[ \frac{d\alpha_t}{dF_t} \right] = \frac{\rho \nu}{(F_t)^\beta}$$

The formula for Bartlett correction is thus:

$$\delta_{t,T,K}^{Bartlett} = \left[ \delta_{t,T,K}^B + \text{vega}_{t,T,K}^B \left( \frac{\partial \sigma_B}{\partial F} + \frac{\partial \sigma_B}{\partial \alpha} \frac{\rho v}{(F_t)^\beta} \right) \right] e^{(r-q)(T-t)} \quad (2.3.16)$$

with  $\frac{\partial \sigma_B}{\partial \alpha}$  being the shortened form for  $\frac{\partial \sigma_B(F_t, t, T, K; \alpha, \beta, v, \rho)}{\partial \alpha}$ . The Bartlett correction improves over the SABR delta in two different aspects:

- Empirically, the Bartlett correction is less sensitive to the choice of  $\beta$  parameter. In practice, the  $\beta$  is often fixed instead of being calibrated together with  $\alpha, v, \rho$  in SABR model. Different choices of  $\beta$  can often all fit the market prices but different choices of  $\beta$  can often lead to different SABR delta  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{SABR}$  position. On the other hand, the  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{Bartlett}$  is consistent with different choices of  $\beta$ . This phenomenon is shown in Figure 2.1. We calibrate a SABR model for S&P 500 index option with trading time  $t$  being 2012-01-04 and expiry being 2012-12-31. We compute and compare delta position and we can see that for SABR delta, different choice of  $\beta$  can lead to significantly different hedging position while the Bartlett delta position is consistent.
- Empirically, the Bartlett correction provides better hedging strategy. As an example, one can observe significant hedging performance difference between  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{Bartlett}$  and  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{SABR}$  on S&P 500 index options. More specifically, we calibrate SABR model on each trading date from Jan 1st 2007 to August 31st 2015 as what we have discussed in section 2.2 with  $\beta = 1$ . And we compare the local hedging performance for all the traded options from Jan 1st 2007 to August 31st 2015. Following [102], we use the Gain ratio below as the evaluating criteria of the hedging performance measure:

$$\text{GAIN} = 1 - \frac{\sum_{i=1}^m \left( \Delta V_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{mkt} - \delta_{t_i, T_i, K_i} \Delta S_{t_i} \right)^2}{\sum_{i=1}^m \left( \Delta V_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{mkt} - \delta_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{BS} \Delta S_{t_i} \right)^2}. \quad (2.3.17)$$

where  $m$  is the total number of data instances to be evaluated. The  $\delta_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{BS}$  is the implied Black–Scholes delta,  $\delta_{t_i, T_i, K_i}$  is the hedging position from the method under consideration, e.g., SABR delta  $\delta_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{SABR}$ , MV delta  $\delta_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{MV}$ , and Bartlett delta  $\delta_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{Bartlett}$ .  $\Delta V_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{mkt}$  and  $\Delta S_{t_i}$  are the changes in market option and underlying prices over a fixed time interval. Here we compare the **daily** local hedging risk with the daily changes of prices. The results are shown in Table 2.1: As we can see in Table 2.1,  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{Bartlett}$  performs much better than  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{SABR}$ . What is more,  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{SABR}$  actually performs worse than Black–Scholes delta  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}$  with implied volatility. The similar phenomenon has been observed in [112] where Heston and Heston-Nandi model performance worse than Black–Scholes delta  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}$  with implied volatility. **The difference of the hedging performance between  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{Bartlett}$  and  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{SABR}$  is an example to illustrate how the unaccounted pricing model parameter dependence on underlying asset affects the hedging performance.** Unfortunately, the pricing model

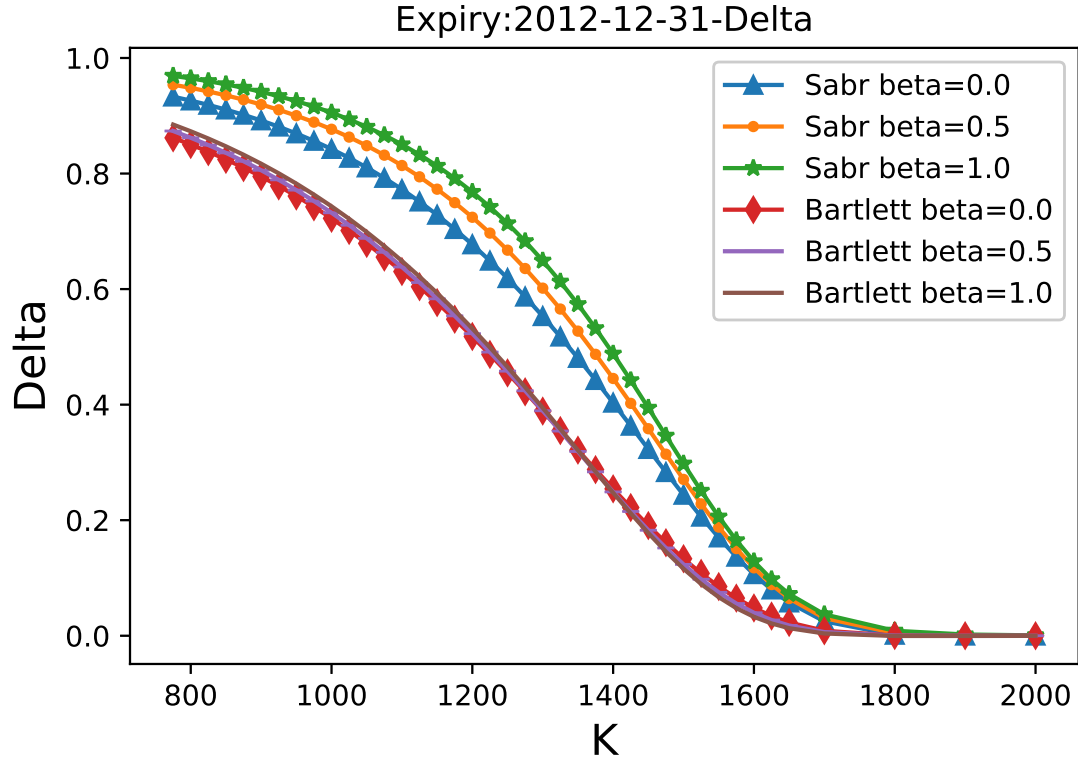


Figure 2.1: Comparing the original SABR delta  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{SABR}$  and Bartlett delta  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{Bartlett}$  from SABR models calibrated with  $\beta = 0, 0.5, 1.0$  on 2012-01-04 for S&P500 index option. The computation of Bartlett delta  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{Bartlett}$  is more robust to the choice of  $\beta$ .

Method	SABR $\delta_{t,T,K}^{SABR}$	Bartlett $\delta_{t,T,K}^{Bartlett}$
Gain (%)	-4.2	27.1

Table 2.1: Daily local hedging risk comparison between original delta  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{SABR}$  from SABR model and  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{Bartlett}$  from Bartlett correction. The performance is evaluated in terms of improvement over Black-Scholes delta on local hedging risk.

parameter dependence often is not that easy to be accounted for as in SABR model with Bartlett correction.

Lastly, we introduce the corrective formula for minimum variance hedging based on SABR model implemented by Hull and White [102]. We use  $\delta^{SV}$  to denote the minimum variance hedging based on SABR model from [102]. Let  $\Delta F$  be a small changes in forward  $F$ , the  $\delta^{SV}$  is given by:

$$\delta_{t,T,K}^{SV} = \frac{V_B(F_t + \Delta F, t, T, K, r; \sigma_B(F_t + \Delta F, t, T, K; \alpha, \beta, \nu, \rho)) - V_B(F_t, t, T, K, r; \sigma_B(t, T, K; \alpha, \beta, \nu, \rho))}{\Delta F} \quad (2.3.18)$$

with  $V_B$  be the Black pricing formula and  $\sigma_B$  be the SABR implied volatility formula discussed in section 2.2.3.

## 2.4 Overview of the Data-Driven Hedging Models

In the previous sections, we discuss the issue of parameter dependence and present several correction methods under Black–Scholes framework. Although the corrective formula (2.3.4), (2.3.12), (2.3.15), and (2.3.16) adopt similar forms, the data-driven MV delta (2.3.4) is significantly different from other corrective formula for the fact that it is based on historical data while (2.3.12), (2.3.15), and (2.3.16) are based on pricing model calibrated to the spot options and underlying prices. Hull and White [102] indicate that MV delta  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{MV}$  estimated based on historical data performs better than  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{LVF}$  and  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{SV}$  estimated based on spot data.

Our exploration on the data-driven models for hedging start roughly the same years as the work of [102] and we adopt the similar methodology as the MV delta where we learn a hedging position function from historical data. However, our explorations are motivated differently:

- The hedging position  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{MV}$ ,  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{LVF}$  and  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{SV}$  proposed in [102] is to correct for the Black–Scholes implied volatility dependence on underlying asset. Specifically, Hull and White [102] demonstrate how one can estimate the  $\frac{\partial \sigma^{imp}}{\partial S}$  empirically.
- Noticing the pricing parameters dependence, we try to learn a hedging position directly from the market data. We are not specifically trying to correct parameters dependence for certain pricing models. We are trying to avoid it by obtaining hedging position without a pricing model at all.

In addition, the data-driven models proposed in this thesis and MV delta are also different in the following ways:

- Hull and White [102] assume a quadratic form to account for the implied volatility dependence on the underlying asset within Black–Scholes framework. The hedging position from our proposed data-driven models is purely determined by market data with machine learning algorithms with no specific parametric form.

- The MV hedging model (2.3.4) focuses on instantaneous hedging analysis (2.1.4). For discrete hedging, particularly when re-balancing is done infrequently, e.g., weekly or monthly, (2.3.4) may no longer be suitable. Our proposed models, which are not based on computing sensitivity of option pricing functions with regards to the underlying asset, can potentially improve the hedging results when the hedging is done less frequently.
- Our proposed data-driven models  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  and  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  can naturally include feature selection and feature extraction which can potentially improve the hedging performance.
- Our proposed data-driven model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  is enhanced to deal with total hedging scenarios instead of focusing on reducing the instantaneous hedging risk as the MV hedging model (2.3.4).

In the following chapters, we will start to formally describe the proposed hedging models and present numerical hedging performance comparison on both synthetic data and real market data.

## Chapter 3

# Data-Driven Kernel Learning Framework for Local Hedging Risk

In this chapter, we start the discussion on our proposed data-driven local hedging model from kernel learning framework. The data-driven kernel hedging model can be summarized as the following: Assume we have  $M$  data instances. Each observation of a market option price  $V_{t_i, K_i, T_i}^{mkt}$  is uniquely associated with a triplet  $\{t_i, T_i, K_i\}$ , where  $t_i$  is the trading time of the option price,  $K_i$  is the strike, and expiry  $T_i$ ,  $i = 1, \dots, M$ . The hedging position function is determined by the quadratic data-driven local risk minimization problem:

$$\min \frac{1}{2M} \sum_{i=1}^M \left( \Delta S_{t_i} \delta(\mathbf{x}_{t_i}^{T_i, K_i}) - \Delta V_{t_i, K_i, T_i}^{mkt} \right)^2$$

With  $\Delta S_{t_i}$  and  $\Delta V_{t_i, K_i, T_i}^{mkt}$  given in (2.1.1) for a fixed time interval  $\Delta t$ . The hedging position  $\delta(\mathbf{x}_{t_i}^{T_i, K_i})$  is given by a data-driven hedging function  $\text{DKL}_{\text{SPL}}(\mathbf{x}_{\mathbf{t}}^{\mathbf{T}, \mathbf{K}}; \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}})$ :

$$\delta(\mathbf{x}_{t_i}^{T_i, K_i}) = \text{DKL}_{\text{SPL}}(\mathbf{x}_{\mathbf{t}}^{\mathbf{T}, \mathbf{K}}; \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}})$$

with  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$  being the parameters for the hedging functions and  $\mathbf{x}_{\mathbf{t}}^{T, K}$  being the input features for the hedging function. Please note that  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$  in this chapter is the parameter for the regularized kernel network to be learnt from data. The  $\alpha$  in section 2.2.3 is the volatility for SABR. They are two unrelated terminologies.

From chapter 2, we have seen various challenges for hedging when the position is computed from the calibrated option value function. Since nonparametric option function estimation does not make specific assumptions and can potentially match option prices more accurately, it is not unreasonable to expect that this hedging challenge can potentially be addressed by reducing mis-specification using a data-driven approach to learn an option value function. Here we in this chapter we also discuss this approach and analyze its challenging for option hedging. Similar to discrete hedging under the parametric model, the hedging position can be computed by

learning a nonparametric option value model and then determining hedging position from the partial derivatives. Indeed this is the approach adopted in [104]. In this chapters, we indicates that the issue of pricing model parameters dependence still exists even if one estimate the pricing model using a machine learning model with no assumption on the dynamic of the underlying asset movement.

The organization of this chapter is as the following: We discuss how one can compute a hedging positions from partial derivatives of the optimal regularized kernel functions in section 3.1.1. The proposed data-driven kernel hedging learning method is presented in section 3.2. In section 3.3, we discuss how cross-validation can be done efficiently for both kernel pricing and kernel hedging model. In section 3.4, we present experiments using synthetic data to illustrate the drawbacks of determining hedging position from partial derivative of pricing function estimated using machine learning algorithms and the effectiveness of data-driven direct kernel hedging functions.

### 3.1 Regularized Kernel Pricing Model

Recognizing various challenges in the parametric financial modeling approach, nonparametric option pricing has also been studied. The nonparametric option value modeling approach has the distinctive advantage of not relying on specific assumptions about the underlying asset price dynamics. Hutchinson et al. [104] first propose a nonparametric data-driven approach to price and hedge European options using neural networks, radial basis functions, and projection pursuit regressions. Many other neural network methods for European option pricing have also been proposed, see, e.g., [170, 16, 84, 73, 119].

Although there are quite a few studies on nonparametric option pricing models, to our knowledge, there has been little research specifically focusing on discrete hedging using a nonparametric method. Even when the hedging problem is considered, e.g., [104], it is treated as a byproduct of obtaining a nonparametric pricing function: The hedging position is obtained from the partial derivative of the option value function. Hutchinson et al. [104] show that, based on hedging errors on some simulated paths, this indirect data-driven hedging approach can potentially be an effective alternative to the traditional parametric delta hedging methods.

In this section, we follow the methodology of [104] and learn a data-driven option pricing model with the regularized kernel network. The hedging position is then given by the partial derivative of the option pricing model with regards to the underlying asset. Our goal is to learn a nonlinear option pricing function  $V(\mathbf{x}; \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}})$  using a regularized kernel method [65].

Assume that we are given a positive definite kernel similarity

$$\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') : \mathbb{R}^d \times \mathbb{R}^d \rightarrow \mathbb{R},$$

which captures similarity between  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $\mathbf{x}'$  implicitly in a high dimensional feature space. Assume that  $\mathcal{H}_K$  is the *Reproducing Kernel Hilbert Space* (RKHS) induced by the symmetric pos-



itive definite kernel function  $\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})$  and  $\|f\|_{\mathcal{H}}$  is the norm in RKHS. We have the following Representer Theorem [162]:

**Theorem 3.1.1.** (*The Representer Theorem*) Let  $\mathcal{X}$  be a nonempty set and  $k$  a positive definite real-valued kernel on  $\mathcal{X} \times \mathcal{X}$  with the RKHS  $\mathcal{H}_K$ . Given the a training sample  $\{\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2, \dots, \mathbf{x}_M\}$ , a strictly monotonically increasing real valued function  $g : [0, \infty) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , and an arbitrary empirical risk function  $E : \mathcal{H}_K \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , then for any  $f^* \in \mathcal{H}_K$  satisfying

$$f^* = \underset{f \in \mathcal{H}_K}{\operatorname{argmin}} E(f(\mathbf{x}_1), f(\mathbf{x}_2), \dots, f(\mathbf{x}_M)) + g(\|f\|_{\mathcal{H}})$$

$f^*$  admits a representation of the form:

$$f^*(\cdot) = \sum_{i=1}^M \hat{\alpha}_i \mathcal{K}(\cdot, \mathbf{x}_i)$$

with  $\hat{\alpha}_i \in \mathbb{R}$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq M$

A regularized kernel regression problem can be formulated as

$$\min_{f \in \mathcal{H}_K} \left( \sum_{i=1}^M L(f(\mathbf{x}_i)) + \lambda_P \|f\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 \right) \quad (3.1.1)$$

where  $L(\cdot)$  is a loss function. The regularization parameter  $\lambda_P > 0$  can be determined based on cross validation.

Following the Representer Theorem, e.g., [162], a solution of (3.1.1) has the form

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = \sum_{i=1}^M \hat{\alpha}_i \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_i) \quad (3.1.2)$$

and the regularization term is given by

$$\|f\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 = \sum_{i=1}^M \sum_{j=1}^M \hat{\alpha}_i \hat{\alpha}_j \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_j). \quad (3.1.3)$$

Assume that a set of  $M$  training points  $\{(\mathbf{x}_{t_1}^{T_1, K_1}, V_{t_1, K_1, T_1}^{mkt}), \dots, (\mathbf{x}_{t_M}^{T_M, K_M}, V_{t_M, K_M, T_M}^{mkt})\}$  are given, where  $\mathbf{x}_t^{T, K} \in \mathbb{R}^{d_t}$  is the input feature for pricing the option with strike  $K$  and expiry  $T$  at time  $t$  and  $V_{t, K, T}^{mkt} = V^{mkt}(t, T, K)$  is the market option price at time  $t$  with strike  $K$  and expiry  $T$ . Each data instance corresponds to a unique triplet  $\{t, T, K\}$ . We can estimate an option value function  $V(\mathbf{x}; \hat{\alpha})$  based on the regularized kernel estimation (3.1.1) with  $\hat{\alpha} = \{\hat{\alpha}_1, \dots, \hat{\alpha}_M\}$ .

Using (3.1.2) and (3.1.3), assuming quadratic loss, the option pricing function:

$$V(\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}; \hat{\alpha}) = \sum_{i=1}^N \hat{\alpha}_i \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}, \mathbf{x}_{t_i}^{T_i, K_i})$$

can be computed by solving

$$\min_{\hat{\alpha}} \left( \sum_{i=1}^M \left( V_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{mkt} - \sum_{j=1}^M \hat{\alpha}_j \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_{t_j}^{T_j, K_j}, \mathbf{x}_{t_i}^{T_i, K_i}) \right)^2 + \lambda_P \sum_{i=1}^M \sum_{j=1}^M \hat{\alpha}_i \hat{\alpha}_j \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_{t_j}^{T_j, K_j}, \mathbf{x}_{t_i}^{T_i, K_i}) \right) \quad (3.1.4)$$

For standard options, the universal RBF kernel

$$\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \tilde{\mathbf{x}}) = e^{-\frac{\|\mathbf{x} - \tilde{\mathbf{x}}\|_2^2}{2\rho^2}} \quad (3.1.5)$$

is a reasonable kernel choice, since the option value function is very smooth, and a suitable bandwidth  $\rho$  is typically problem dependent and can be determined using cross validation.

### 3.1.1 Indirect Hedging Positions From Kernel Pricing Functions

Assume that the one dimension of the attribute vector  $\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K} \in \mathbb{R}^{d_l}$  corresponds to the moneyness  $S_t/K$  at time  $t$  and other dimensions are not related to underlying prices. Then the delta hedging function option with strike  $K$  and expiry  $T$  at trading time  $t$  is typically determined as:

$$\delta_{t,T,K}^{IKL} = \frac{\partial V(\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}; \hat{\alpha})}{\partial S} = \sum_{i=1}^M \hat{\alpha}_i \frac{\partial \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}, \mathbf{x}_{t_i}^{T_i, K_i})}{\partial S} = \sum_{i=1}^M \frac{\hat{\alpha}_i}{K} \frac{\partial \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}, \mathbf{x}_{t_i}^{T_i, K_i})}{\partial S/K} \quad (3.1.6)$$

Hutchinson et al. [104] demonstrate that this nonparametric hedging approach, using the partial derivative of a nonparametric pricing function learned from historical market data, can be a useful alternative for option hedging.

However, using (3.1.6) as the hedging position similarly does not minimize variance of hedge risk in general and the challenge in accounting for parameter dependence on the underlying remains. We can see that from the following arguments. We made an unrealistic assumption that the estimated kernel function  $V(\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}; \hat{\alpha})$  matches the target market option price exactly, i.e.,

$$V(\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}; \hat{\alpha}) = V_{t,T,K}^{mkt}$$

and

$$\frac{dV}{dS}(\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}; \hat{\alpha}) = \frac{dV^{mkt}}{dS}$$

Then we have:

$$\frac{dV}{dS}(\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}; \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}) = \sum_{i=1}^M \hat{\alpha}_i \frac{\partial \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}, \mathbf{x}_{t_i}^{T_i, K_i})}{\partial S} + \sum_{i=1}^M \frac{\partial \hat{\alpha}_i}{\partial S} \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_i) = \frac{dV^{mkt}}{dS}$$

Hence in general

$$\frac{\partial \hat{\alpha}_i}{\partial S} \neq 0$$

unless

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial S}(\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}; \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}) = \frac{dV^{mkt}}{dS}. \quad (3.1.7)$$

However there is no reason that a solution of the regression problem (3.1.4) should satisfy (3.1.7). Consequently it is similarly difficult to account for all dependence from  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$  on the underlying asset, even infinitesimally, in the estimated kernel model.

Furthermore, error magnification can happen by deriving the hedging position from a estimated kernel function. In general, the estimated kernel pricing function  $V(\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}; \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}})$  can not match the all the target market option prices exactly and the estimated kernel pricing function inevitably will have prediction error when used to predict the price of unobserved testing data instances. The calibration error and prediction can potentially increase the hedging error when using the  $\frac{\partial V}{\partial S}(\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}; \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}})$  as the hedging position.

## 3.2 Regularized Kernel Hedging Model

Let us again assume that a set of  $M$  training points

$$\left\{ (\mathbf{x}_{t_1}^{T_1, K_1}, \Delta V_{t_1, K_1, T_1}^{mkt}, \Delta S_{t_1}), \dots, (\mathbf{x}_{t_M}^{T_M, K_M}, \Delta V_{t_M, K_M, T_M}^{mkt}, \Delta S_{t_M}) \right\}$$

are given, where  $\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K} \in \mathbb{R}^{d_l}$  is the input feature for **hedging** the option with strike  $K$  and expiry  $T$  at time  $t$ . The  $\Delta V_{t,K,T}^{mkt}$  is the change of market option price at time  $t$  with strike  $K$  and expiry  $T$  over a fixed time interval  $\Delta t$ , e.g., daily, weekly, or monthly. The  $\Delta S_t$  is the change of underlying price at time  $t$  over a fixed time interval  $\Delta t$  over the same  $\Delta t$ .  $\Delta V_{t,K,T}^{mkt}$  and  $\Delta S_t$  are given by equation (2.1.1). Again, each data instance corresponds to a unique triplet  $\{t, T, K\}$ .

We can estimate an option hedging function  $\delta(\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}; \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}})$  based on the regularized kernel network with  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}} = \{\hat{\alpha}_1, \dots, \hat{\alpha}_M\}$ . The empirical loss function is chosen to correspond to the square of discrete local hedging risk in section 2.1, i.e.,

$$L\left(\delta(\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}; \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}})\right) = \left(\Delta V_{t,K,T}^{mkt} - \Delta S_t \delta(\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}; \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}})\right)^2. \quad (3.2.1)$$

The hedging position function  $\delta(\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}; \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}})$  can be estimated from the regularized optimization

below:

$$\min_{\delta \in \mathcal{H}_K} \left\{ \sum_{i=1}^M L \left( \delta(\mathbf{x}_{t_i}^{T_i, K_i}; \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}) \right)^2 + \lambda_P \|\delta\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 \right\} \quad (3.2.2)$$

Note that the Representer Theorem still holds for (3.2.2). Using the Representer Theorem (3.1.2) and (3.1.3), (3.2.3) can be computed by solving the following convex quadratic minimization,

$$\min_{\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}} \left( \sum_{i=1}^M \left( \Delta V_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{mkt} - \Delta S_{t_i} \sum_{j=1}^M \hat{\alpha}_j \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_{t_j}^{T_j, K_j}, \mathbf{x}_{t_i}^{T_i, K_i}) \right)^2 + \lambda_P \sum_{i=1}^M \sum_{j=1}^M \hat{\alpha}_i \hat{\alpha}_j \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_{t_j}^{T_j, K_j}, \mathbf{x}_{t_i}^{T_i, K_i}) \right) \quad (3.2.3)$$

The loss function for the hedging function in the proposed formulation (3.2.2) directly corresponds to the sum of square of local hedging risk for a discrete  $\Delta t$ -time period. In addition the hedge function is the solution of the optimization problem and there is no potential error magnification through partial derivative computation. We avoid the pricing model parameters dependence on underlying asset by not computing a pricing model at all.

Since at the expiry the delta of the payoff function is a discontinuous step function, the delta hedging function of an option changes quickly as the underlying changes near the expiry. Consequently we choose to use a spline kernel function [160] for the hedging function estimation. The explicit expression for the spline kernel with order  $O_d$  for the one-dimensional case is :

$$\mathcal{K}(x, y) = \sum_{r=0}^{O_d} \frac{\binom{O_d}{r}}{2O_d - r + 1} \min(x, y)^{2O_d - r + 1} |x - y|^r + \sum_{r=0}^{O_d} x^r y^r$$

For multidimensional data, the spline kernel is the product of one-dimensional spline kernel functions with regard to each dimension. Interested readers can be referred to [160] for more details. The major benefit of using the spline kernel over the gaussian kernel is that spline kernel does not have a hyperparameter to be tuned while gaussian kernel has a bandwidth parameter to be tuned by cross-validation which is often costly. In this thesis, we majorly use spline kernel and, in section 3.4, we will show that spline kernel performs better or equally well when compared with gaussian kernel. In the latter discussion, we denote  $\delta_{t, T, K}^{DKL} = \delta(\mathbf{x}_t^{T, K}; \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}})$  as the hedging position from the directly kernel hedging model.

### 3.3 Cross Validation

For our data-driven approach, we need to select an appropriate penalty  $\lambda_P$  to control the model complexity. Cross-validation (CV) is a commonly used method for the performance estimation and model selection for the learning algorithms. For example, the Leave-One-Out Cross-Validation (LOOCV) computes the output for each data instance using parameters trained on the remaining data instances. For the regularized kernel methods, we can compute the CV error efficiently without retraining the model in each CV round.

Recall that, for the regularized network or pricing model, the minimization problem is

$$\min_{\hat{\alpha}} \left( \sum_{i=1}^M \left( V_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{mkt} - \sum_{j=1}^M \hat{\alpha}_j \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_{t_j}^{T_j, K_j}, \mathbf{x}_{t_i}^{T_i, K_i}) \right)^2 + \lambda_P \sum_{i=1}^M \sum_{j=1}^M \hat{\alpha}_i \hat{\alpha}_j \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_{t_j}^{T_j, K_j}, \mathbf{x}_{t_i}^{T_i, K_i}) \right)$$

Let  $\mathbb{K}$  be the kernel matrix with  $\mathbb{K}_{ij} = \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_j)$ . (Note  $\mathbb{K}$  here denotes the kernel matrix which should not be confused with the strike  $K$ .) Problem (3.1.1) can be rewritten in matrix form:

$$\min_{\hat{\alpha} \in \mathbb{R}^M} (\mathbb{K} \hat{\alpha} - \mathbb{V})^T (\mathbb{K} \hat{\alpha} - \mathbb{V}) + \lambda_P \hat{\alpha}^T \mathbb{K} \hat{\alpha} \quad (3.3.1)$$

with

$$\mathbb{V} = \{V_{t_1, T_1, K_1}^{mkt}, \dots, V_{t_M, T_M, K_M}^{mkt}\}, \quad \hat{\alpha} = \{\hat{\alpha}_1, \dots, \hat{\alpha}_M\}$$

The solution to (3.3.1) is:

$$\hat{\alpha} = (\mathbb{K} + \lambda_P \mathbf{I})^{-1} \mathbb{V}$$

Given the eigen-decomposition  $\mathbb{K} = \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{\Lambda} \mathbf{Q}^T$ , we can easily see that:

$$(\mathbb{K} + \lambda_P \mathbf{I})^{-1} = \mathbf{Q} (\mathbf{\Lambda} + \lambda_P \mathbf{I})^{-1} \mathbf{Q}^T \quad (3.3.2)$$

Because  $(\mathbf{\Lambda} + \lambda_P \mathbf{I})$  is a diagonal matrix, given the eigen-decomposition  $\mathbb{K} = \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{\Lambda} \mathbf{Q}^T$ , we can get different solutions to (3.3.1) as  $\lambda_P$  varies in  $O(M^2)$ .

Let  $V(\mathbf{x}_{t_j}^{T_j, K_j}; \hat{\alpha})$  be the output for data instance  $j$  when regularized kernel methods (3.1.4) is trained on all training data instances. Let  $V^l(\mathbf{x}_{t_j}^{T_j, K_j}; \hat{\alpha}^l)$  be the output for data instance  $j$  when regularized kernel methods (3.1.4) is trained on all training data instances except  $\mathbf{x}_{t_l}^{T_l, K_l}$ . Let  $\mathbb{V}^l = \{\mathbb{V}_1^l, \mathbb{V}_2^l, \dots, \mathbb{V}_M^l\}$  be the vector where  $\mathbb{V}_j^l = V_{t_j, T_j, K_j}^{mkt}$  for  $j \neq l$  and  $\mathbb{V}_l^l = V^l(\mathbf{x}_{t_l}^{T_l, K_l}; \hat{\alpha}^l)$ . Since  $V^l(\cdot; \hat{\alpha}^l)$  is the model trained on all example except  $\mathbf{x}_{t_l}^{T_l, K_l}$ , it is easy to see that  $V^l(\cdot; \hat{\alpha}^l)$  minimizes

$$\min_{\hat{\alpha} \in \mathbb{R}^M} (\mathbb{K} \hat{\alpha} - \mathbb{V}^l)^T (\mathbb{K} \hat{\alpha} - \mathbb{V}^l) + \lambda_P \hat{\alpha}^T \mathbb{K} \hat{\alpha} \quad (3.3.3)$$

The solution to (3.3.3) is:

$$\hat{\alpha}^l = (\mathbb{K} + \lambda_P \mathbf{I})^{-1} \mathbb{V}^l$$

Let  $\mathbf{B} = \mathbb{K}(\mathbb{K} + \lambda_P \mathbf{I})^{-1}$ , therefore, we have

$$\mathbf{B} \mathbb{V} = \{V(\mathbf{x}_{t_1}^{T_1, K_1}; \hat{\alpha}), \dots, V(\mathbf{x}_{t_M}^{T_M, K_M}; \hat{\alpha})\}$$

We can easily show that:

$$V^l(\mathbf{x}_t^{T, K}; \hat{\alpha}^l) - V(\mathbf{x}_t^{T, K}; \hat{\alpha}) = \sum_{i=1}^M B_{li} (\mathbb{V}_i^l - \mathbb{V}_i) = B_{ll} (V^l(\mathbf{x}_{t_l}^{T_l, K_l}; \hat{\alpha}^l) - \mathbb{V}_l) = B_{ll} (V^l(\mathbf{x}_{t_l}^{T_l, K_l}; \hat{\alpha}^l) - V_{t_l, T_l, K_l}^{mkt})$$

Thus,

$$V^l(\mathbf{x}_{t_l}^{T_l, K_l}; \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}^l) = \frac{V(\mathbf{x}_{t_l}^{T_l, K_l}; \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}^l) - B_{ll} V_{t_l, T_l, K_l}^{mkt}}{1 - B_{ll}} \quad (3.3.4)$$

Therefore, we can get the  $V^l(\mathbf{x}_{t_l}^{T_l, K_l}; \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}^l)$  without actually retraining the model. The leave-one-out estimations for all data instance are:

$$\mathbb{V}_{loo} = (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{B}_{LL})^{-1} (\mathbf{B}\mathbb{V} - \mathbf{B}_{LL}\mathbb{V}) \quad (3.3.5)$$

and the leave-one-out errors for all data instance are:

$$\mathbb{V} - \mathbb{V}_{loo} = \mathbb{V} - (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{B}_{LL})^{-1} (\mathbf{B}\mathbb{V} - \mathbf{B}_{LL}\mathbb{V}) = (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{B}_{LL})^{-1} (\mathbb{V} - \mathbf{B}\mathbb{V}) \quad (3.3.6)$$

where  $\mathbf{B}_{LL}$  is a diagonal matrix with  $B_{ii}$ ,  $i = 1, \dots, M$  on its diagonal.

We can further simplify the expression by noting the fact that:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{B} &= \mathbb{K}(\mathbb{K} + \lambda_p \mathbf{I})^{-1} \\ &= \mathbf{Q}\boldsymbol{\Lambda}(\boldsymbol{\Lambda} + \lambda_p \mathbf{I})^{-1} \mathbf{Q}^T \\ &= \mathbf{Q}(\boldsymbol{\Lambda} + \lambda_p \mathbf{I} - \lambda_p \mathbf{I})(\boldsymbol{\Lambda} + \lambda_p \mathbf{I})^{-1} \mathbf{Q}^T \\ &= \mathbf{I} - \lambda_p \mathbf{Q}(\boldsymbol{\Lambda} + \lambda_p \mathbf{I})^{-1} \mathbf{Q}^T = \mathbf{I} - \lambda_p (\mathbb{K} + \lambda_p \mathbf{I})^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, we can get:

$$(\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{B}_{LL}) = \text{diag}(\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{B}) = \lambda_p \text{diag}((\mathbb{K} + \lambda_p \mathbf{I})^{-1})$$

$$\mathbb{V} - \mathbf{B}\mathbb{V} = \lambda_p (\mathbb{K} + \lambda_p \mathbf{I})^{-1} \mathbb{V} = \lambda_p \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$$

Finally, we can get:

$$\mathbb{V} - \mathbb{V}_{loo} = \text{diag}((\mathbb{K} + \lambda_p \mathbf{I})^{-1})^{-1} \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}} \quad (3.3.7)$$

Given the eigen-decomposition  $\mathbb{K} = \mathbf{Q}\boldsymbol{\Lambda}\mathbf{Q}^T$ , we can compute  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$  as  $\lambda_p$  varies in  $O(M^2)$ . Similarly, given the eigen-decomposition  $\mathbb{K} = \mathbf{Q}\boldsymbol{\Lambda}\mathbf{Q}^T$ , we can compute the diagonal of  $(\mathbb{K} + \lambda_p \mathbf{I})^{-1}$  in  $O(M^2)$ . Then using (3.3.7), the LOOCV errors can be computed in  $O(M^2)$ . It can be further shown [136] that, given the eigen-decomposition  $\mathbb{K} = \mathbf{Q}\boldsymbol{\Lambda}\mathbf{Q}^T$ , the computational complexity for the  $n$ -fold cross-validation ( $n$ FCV) is  $O(M^3/n)$ . Interested readers can refer to [136, 162] for more details.

Let  $\Delta\mathbb{V} = \{\Delta V_{t_1, T_1, K_1}^{mkt}, \dots, \Delta V_{t_M, T_M, K_M}^{mkt}\}$  and let  $\mathbf{D}$  be a diagonal matrix with  $D_{ii} = \Delta S_{t_i}$ ,  $i = 1, \dots, M$ , on its diagonal. Similarly, we can rewrite the minimization problem (3.2.3) in matrix form:

$$\min_{\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}} \in \mathbb{R}^n} (\mathbf{D}\mathbb{K}\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}} - \Delta\mathbb{V})^T (\mathbf{D}\mathbb{K}\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}} - \Delta\mathbb{V}) + \lambda_p \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}^T \mathbb{K} \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}} \quad (3.3.8)$$

Let  $\tilde{\mathbb{K}} = \mathbf{D}\mathbb{K}$ , the solution to (3.3.8) can be obtained by:

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}} = (\tilde{\mathbb{K}}^T \tilde{\mathbb{K}} + \lambda_p \mathbb{K})^{-1} \tilde{\mathbb{K}}^T \Delta\mathbb{V}$$

Unfortunately, we can not directly use the fast cross validation algorithms from [136, 162] for the minimization problem (3.3.8). Because  $(\tilde{\mathbf{K}}^T \tilde{\mathbf{K}} + \lambda_p \mathbf{I})^{-1}$  can not be easily inverted in  $O(M^2)$  as  $\lambda_p$  varies.

However if we change the penalty term for (3.3.8) from  $\lambda_p \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}^T \mathbb{K} \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$  to  $\lambda_p \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}^T \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$ , the minimization problem becomes:

$$\min_{\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}} \in \mathbb{R}^m} (\mathbf{D} \mathbb{K} \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}} - \Delta \check{\mathbf{V}})^T (\mathbf{D} \mathbb{K} \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}} - \Delta \check{\mathbf{V}}) + \lambda_p \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}^T \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}} \quad (3.3.9)$$

The solution to (3.3.9) can be obtained by:

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}} = (\tilde{\mathbb{K}}^T \tilde{\mathbb{K}} + \lambda_p \mathbf{I})^{-1} \tilde{\mathbb{K}}^T \Delta \mathbb{V}$$

Utilizing the ideas from [136, 162], we can similarly show that, given the singular value decomposition  $\tilde{\mathbf{K}} = \mathbf{U} \boldsymbol{\Sigma} \mathbf{V}^T$ , for the problem (3.3.9), the computational complexity for the LOOCV is still  $O(M^2)$  and the computational complexity for the  $n$ FCV is still  $O(M^3/n)$ . In practice, changing the penalty term from  $\lambda_p \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}^T \mathbb{K} \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$  to  $\lambda_p \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}^T \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$  will not affect the actual performance too much. Therefore, in order to improve the computation efficiency for the direct data driven approach, we are solving the problem (3.3.9).

### 3.4 Comparison using synthetic data

Following the S&P 500 market option specifications in [103], we first synthetically generate option data assuming that the underlying price follows a Heston model [93]. We compare hedging effectiveness of direct hedging function learning (3.2.2) and indirect hedging function estimation (3.1.4). In addition, we compare their performance to that of using analytic delta under the Heston model, which can be regarded as a best case benchmark, at least for daily hedging. Note that there is no model mis-specification for the underlying price in this synthetic case.

The experiments in this section is to demonstrate the following aspects:

- Computing the hedging position as the partial derivative of a nonparametric option pricing model with regards to underlying asset still suffers from the issue of parameter dependence on underlying asset.
- The hedging position directly learnt from data as in (3.2.3) can be very close to the best case benchmark in daily hedging.
- The hedging position directly learnt from data using spline kernel performs better when compared with gaussian kernel.

Since the loss function is quadratic, solutions to (3.2.2) and (3.1.4) can be easily computed from linear equation solvers. In addition we also compare hedging performance using a RBF

kernel (3.1.5) versus a spline kernel. Specifically, using the generated synthetic data, we compare here hedging performance of the following hedging computation methods:

- $\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}$ : implied volatility BS delta
- $\delta_{t,T,K}^{Heston}$ : analytical Heston delta
- $DKL_{SPL}$ : direct learning a spline kernel hedging function based on (3.2.2)
- $DKL_{RBF}$ : directly learning a RBF kernel hedging function directly based on (3.2.2)
- $IKL_{SPL}$ : determining hedging position indirectly as the partial derivative (3.1.6) of the option value function estimated from (3.1.4) using a spline kernel
- $IKL_{RBF}$ : determining hedging position indirectly as the partial derivative (3.1.6) of the option value function estimated from (3.1.4) using a RBF kernel

Training data consists of simulated daily underlying price  $S_t$  for two years<sup>1</sup>,  $t = 1, \dots, 2 \times 252$ , assuming a risk-neutral Heston model below:

$$\begin{aligned} dS &= (r - q)Sdt + \sqrt{v}Sd\hat{W} \\ dv &= \kappa^*(\bar{v}^* - v)dt + \eta\sqrt{v}d\hat{Z} \\ E[d\hat{Z}d\hat{W}] &= \rho dt \end{aligned}$$

In addition, a vector of simulated (traded) market call option prices are generated, on each day  $t$ , with different strikes and time to expiry, following the CBOE specifications of stock options described in [103]. The option prices  $V^{mkt}$  are computed using the analytical option formula (2.2.10) under the Heston model [93] in section 2.2.2, using the the parameters from [12], which are given in Table 3.1. In other words, we assume in this section:

$$V^{mkt}(t, T, K) = V_{Heston}(S_t, t, T, K, r, q; v, \kappa^*, \bar{v}^*, \eta, \rho)$$

Please note that the heston delta position under this synthetic scenarios does not have the parameter dependence issue, since for the synthetic case all heston parameter is fixed, and can be used as the benchmark.

$$\delta_{t,T,K}^{Heston} = \frac{\partial V_{Heston}(S_t, t, T, K, r, q; v, \kappa^*, \bar{v}^*, \eta, \rho)}{\partial S} = \frac{dV^{mkt}}{dS}$$

The Black-Scholes delta position from implied volatility still has the the issue of implied volatility depending on underlying asset:

$$\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS} = \frac{\partial V_{BS}(S_t, t, T, K, r, q; \sigma_{t,T,K}^{imp})}{\partial S} \neq \frac{dV^{mkt}}{dS}$$

---

<sup>1</sup>We assume that there are 252 trading days in a year.



where  $\sigma_{t,T,K}^{imp}$  is the volatility that equals Black–Scholes price and Heston price

$$V_{BS}(S_t, t, T, K, r, q; \sigma_{t,T,K}^{imp}) = V_{Heston}(S_t, t, T, K, r, q; v, \kappa^*, \bar{v}^*, \eta, \rho)$$

$r$	$q$	$\bar{v}^*$	$\kappa^*$	$\eta$	$\rho$	$S_0$	$v_0$
0.02	0.0	0.04	1.15	0.39	-0.64	100	0.04

Table 3.1: Parameters for the Heston model. This set of parameters is used to generate synthetic experiments for demonstrating the effectiveness of DKL<sub>SPL</sub> on local hedging.

Testing data consists of 100 daily underlying price paths and corresponding option prices, spanning a six month period. The Heston parameter is still specified as in Table 3.1. We report average performance measures over 10 random training-test-data sets generated as described. <sup>2</sup>

We train a regularized option price kernel model for the indirect hedging IKL<sub>SPL</sub> and IKL<sub>RBF</sub>. For IKL<sub>SPL</sub> and IKL<sub>RBF</sub>, the hedging position is the partial derivative of the estimated pricing function (3.1.6), as in [104]. We note that the simulation hedging analysis in [104] considers only the Black–Scholes model and the results in [104] indicate that a lower hedging error can be achieved on a subset of simulated paths.

Following a common practice, we use the standard deviation of the pairwise Euclidean distance of the training data as the bandwidth  $\rho$  for the RBF kernel. The regularization parameter  $\lambda_\rho$  is however selected using a 5-fold cross-validation. We also consider weekly hedging and monthly hedging, which correspond to hedging over a 5-business-days period and 20-business-days period respectively.

To investigate impact of the feature choice, we evaluate hedging performance using

- Feature Set #1 = {MONEYNES (  $S_t/K$  ), TIME-TO-EXPIRY (  $T - t$  )}.
- Feature Set #2 = {MONEYNES (  $S_t/K$  ), TIME-TO-EXPIRY (  $T - t$  ),  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}$ }.

In the second feature set, the Black–Scholes delta  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}$  using the implied volatility is used as an additional feature in determining the hedging position.

Let the number of data instances to be evaluated be  $m$ . We have the profit and loss (2.1.5) of the local hedging portfolio in section 2.1.1 over the fixed time interval  $\Delta t$  for each data instance, which corresponds to a unique triplet  $\{t, T, K\}$ :

$$\Delta P_{t,T,K}^H = \Delta S_t \delta_{t,T,K} - \Delta V_{t,K,T}^{mkt}$$

---

<sup>2</sup>Following CBOE option specification rules, the size of a training or testing data set can vary slightly for each simulation run.

where  $\delta_{t,T,K}$  is the hedging position from different approaches, e.g., Black–Scholes delta  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}$ , Heston delta  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{Heston}$ , direct data-driven hedging position  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{DKL}$ , and indirect data-driven hedging position  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{IKL}$ . We evaluate the performance in four different ways:

1. Gain (2.3.17) over Black-Scholes  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}$  as in [102].
2. The mean absolute value of  $\Delta P_{t,T,K}^H$

$$\mathbf{E}(|\Delta V^{mkt} - \Delta S \delta|) = \frac{1}{m} \sum_{i=1}^m |\Delta P_H(t_i, T_i, K_i)|$$

3. The 95% Value-at-Risk (VaR) of  $\{\Delta P_H(t_i, T_i, K_i) | i = 1, \dots, m\}$
4. The 95% Conditional-Value-at-Risk (CVaR) of  $\{\Delta P_H(t_i, T_i, K_i) | i = 1, \dots, m\}$

**Feature Set #1:** {MONEYNESS ( $S_t/K$ ), TIME-TO-EXPIRY ( $T - t$ )}

For the synthetic data, it is known that the option price is a function of the moneyness  $\frac{S}{K}$  and time to expiry  $T - t$ , which are the attributes  $\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}$  in Feature Set #1. Table 3.2, 3.3 and 3.4 report results for daily, weekly, and monthly hedging respectively.

Method	Gain (%)	$\mathbf{E}( \Delta V^{mkt} - \Delta S \delta )$	Std	VaR	CVaR
$\delta_{BS}$	0.0	0.185	0.286	0.380	0.574
IKL <sub>RBF</sub>	-3.3	0.171	0.291	0.356	0.566
IKL <sub>SPL</sub>	-183.3	0.291	0.482	0.669	1.105
DKL <sub>RBF</sub>	63.1	0.120	0.174	0.251	0.352
DKL <sub>SPL</sub>	<b>64.9</b>	<b>0.121</b>	<b>0.170</b>	<b>0.255</b>	<b>0.345</b>
HESTON	63.6	0.121	0.173	0.266	0.360

Table 3.2: Daily hedging comparison on synthetic experiments between various hedging strategies. The hedging performance is evaluated in terms of local hedging risk.

<sup>1</sup> FS #1:  $\mathbf{x} = \{\text{MONEYNESS}, \text{TIME-TO-EXPIRY}\}$

<sup>2</sup> Bold entry indicating best Gain

Table 3.2 and 3.3 demonstrate that the direct hedging function learning DKL<sub>SPL</sub> & DKL<sub>RBF</sub> significantly outperform the indirect hedging learning IKL<sub>SPL</sub> & IKL<sub>RBF</sub> in Gain and different risk measures considered. Indeed, DKL<sub>SPL</sub> & DKL<sub>RBF</sub> slightly outperform the benchmark of using the analytic Heston delta. The indirect hedging function learning performs more poorly than the implied BS delta hedging. In addition, the spline kernel performs better than the RBF

Method	Gain (%)	$\mathbf{E}( \Delta V^{mkt} - \Delta S\delta )$	Std	VaR	CVaR
$\delta_{BS}$	0.0	0.414	0.620	0.776	1.009
$IKL_{RBF}$	-197.6	0.406	1.070	0.741	1.254
$IKL_{SPL}$	-94.7	0.548	0.866	1.114	1.738
$DKL_{RBF}$	47.0	0.312	0.451	0.620	0.825
$DKL_{SPL}$	<b>50.8</b>	<b>0.312</b>	<b>0.435</b>	<b>0.622</b>	<b>0.797</b>
HESTON	45.7	0.319	0.456	0.651	0.840

Table 3.3: Weekly hedging comparison on synthetic experiments between various hedging strategies. The hedging performance is evaluated in terms of local hedging risk.

<sup>1</sup> FS #1:  $\mathbf{x} = \{\text{MONEYNESS, TIME-TO-EXPIRY}\}$

<sup>2</sup> Bold entry indicating best Gain

Method	Gain (%)	$\mathbf{E}( \Delta V^{mkt} - \Delta S\delta )$	Std	VaR	CVaR
$\delta_{BS}$	0.0	0.941	1.484	1.516	1.808
$IKL_{RBF}$	1.0	0.888	1.470	1.516	1.829
$IKL_{SPL}$	-36.9	1.135	1.729	2.033	2.894
$DKL_{RBF}$	33.6	0.860	1.181	1.612	1.949
$DKL_{SPL}$	35.4	0.858	1.165	1.610	1.922
HESTON	<b>38.7</b>	<b>0.814</b>	<b>1.136</b>	<b>1.544</b>	<b>1.829</b>

Table 3.4: Monthly hedging comparison on synthetic experiments between various hedging strategies. The hedging performance is evaluated in terms of local hedging risk.

<sup>1</sup> FS #1:  $\mathbf{x} = \{\text{MONEYNESS, TIME-TO-EXPIRY}\}$

<sup>2</sup> Bold entry indicating best Gain

kernel (with the standard deviation as the bandwidth parameter). The RBF kernel yields larger risk measures and smaller Gain for both the direct and indirect hedging learning methods.

Table 3.4 reports hedging comparison for monthly hedging. We observe that  $\text{DKL}_{\text{SPL}}$  &  $\text{DKL}_{\text{RBF}}$  significantly outperform the indirect hedging learning  $\text{IKL}_{\text{SPL}}$  &  $\text{IKL}_{\text{RBF}}$  in Gain and various risk measures. In addition,  $\text{DKL}_{\text{SPL}}$  &  $\text{DKL}_{\text{RBF}}$  continue to achieve enhanced performance over  $\delta_{\text{BS}}$ , with the spline kernel  $\text{DKL}_{\text{SPL}}$  yielding better results than  $\text{DKL}_{\text{RBF}}$ . Not surprisingly, hedging performance of each method also deteriorates as the length of the hedging period increases, with larger mean absolute hedging error and larger standard deviation for monthly hedging than for daily and weekly hedging.

Table 3.4 also illustrates that, unlike daily and weekly hedging,  $\text{DKL}_{\text{SPL}}$  &  $\text{DKL}_{\text{RBF}}$  slightly underperform the analytic Heston delta benchmark for monthly hedging. Given that the analytic delta is for instantaneous hedging while the direct hedging learning  $\text{DKL}_{\text{SPL}}$  minimizes quadratic hedging error, one would expect better performance from the direct hedging learning  $\text{DKL}_{\text{SPL}}$ . We suspect that this is due to the effect of the specific combination of choices of features and kernel. Next we show that, with a different feature set, performance of direct hedging is improved, which suggests the possibility of surpassing analytic Heston delta benchmark, using a more suitable feature set, for a longer period hedging.

**Feature Set #2:**  $\{\text{MONEYNESS } (S_t/K), \text{ TIME-TO-EXPIRY } (T-t), \delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}\}$

We add the Black–Scholes delta  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}$  using the implied volatility as an additional feature in the direct hedging learning, since Hull and White [102] indicate that a better minimum variance hedge can be calculated based on the implied volatility delta. Table 3.5, 3.6, and 3.7 present hedging results for  $\text{DKL}_{\text{SPL}}$  &  $\text{DKL}_{\text{RBF}}$  for  $\{\text{MONEYNESS } (S_t/K), \text{ TIME-TO-EXPIRY } (T-t), \delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}\}$ . For clarity, we also include the results for FS #1  $\{\text{MONEYNESS } (S_t/K), \text{ TIME-TO-EXPIRY } (T-t)\}$  and Heston delta for ease of comparison.

Method		Gain (%)	$\mathbf{E}( \Delta V^{mkt} - \Delta S \delta )$	Std	VaR	CVaR
$\text{DKL}_{\text{RBF}}$	FS #1	63.1	0.120	0.174	0.251	0.352
	FS #2	62.3	0.114	0.176	0.238	0.349
$\text{DKL}_{\text{SPL}}$	FS #1	64.9	0.121	0.170	0.255	0.345
	FS #2	<b>70.9</b>	<b>0.110</b>	<b>0.154</b>	<b>0.234</b>	<b>0.322</b>
HESTON		63.6	0.121	0.173	0.266	0.360

Table 3.5: Daily hedging comparison on synthetic experiments between various hedging strategies. One additional feature  $\delta_{\text{BS}}$  is added. The hedging performance is evaluated in terms of local hedging risk.

<sup>1</sup> FS #2:  $\mathbf{x} = \{\text{MONEYNESS}, \text{TIME-TO-EXPIRY}, \delta_{\text{BS}}\}$

<sup>2</sup> Bold entry indicating best Gain

Method		Gain (%)	$E( \Delta V^{mkt} - \Delta S\delta )$	Std	VaR	CVaR
DKL <sub>RBF</sub>	FS #1	47.0	0.312	0.451	0.620	0.825
	FS #2	51.4	0.301	0.432	0.611	0.816
DKL <sub>SPL</sub>	FS #1	50.8	0.312	0.435	0.622	0.797
	FS #2	<b>53.5</b>	<b>0.299</b>	<b>0.422</b>	<b>0.606</b>	<b>0.794</b>
HESTON		45.7	0.319	0.456	0.651	0.840

Table 3.6: Weekly hedging comparison on synthetic experiments between various hedging strategies. One additional feature  $\delta_{BS}$  is added. The hedging performance is evaluated in terms of local hedging risk.

<sup>1</sup> FS #2:  $\mathbf{x} = \{\text{MONEYNESS}, \text{TIME-TO-EXPIRY}, \delta_{BS}\}$

<sup>2</sup> Bold entry indicating best Gain

Method		Gain (%)	$E( \Delta V^{mkt} - \Delta S\delta )$	Std	VaR	CVaR
DKL <sub>RBF</sub>	FS #1	33.6	0.860	1.181	1.612	1.949
	FS #2	30.1	0.863	1.217	1.652	2.104
DKL <sub>SPL</sub>	FS #1	35.4	0.858	1.165	1.610	1.922
	FS #2	36.6	0.836	1.156	1.609	1.953
HESTON		<b>38.7</b>	<b>0.814</b>	<b>1.136</b>	<b>1.544</b>	<b>1.829</b>

Table 3.7: Monthly hedging comparison on synthetic experiments between various hedging strategies. One additional feature  $\delta_{BS}$  is added. The hedging performance is evaluated in terms of local hedging risk.

<sup>1</sup> FS #2:  $\mathbf{x} = \{\text{MONEYNESS}, \text{TIME-TO-EXPIRY}, \delta_{BS}\}$

<sup>2</sup> Bold entry indicating best Gain

From Table 3.5, 3.6 and 3.7, we observe that, for daily and weekly hedging, including the BS delta further improves the performance of the direct hedging learning methods, which outperforms analytical delta hedging. For monthly hedging, however, the performance is similar to what we obtain with that of the feature set #1. Overall, including the BS delta as an attribute is beneficial for the direct hedging function learning.

### 3.5 Enhancement Over the Kernel Local Hedging Model

In this chapter, we illustrate that, even in a nonparametric kernel approach to model the option value function, dependence on the underlying can exist for the estimated kernel parameters. Consequently, using the partial derivatives of the model option pricing function, parametrically or nonparametrically estimated, will fail to minimize hedging error, even instantaneously.

Thus, we propose to directly learn nonparametric kernel hedging functions by minimizing the sum of square of the discrete local hedging risk, bypassing the intermediate step of the option value function estimation. Using synthetic data, we first demonstrate that the proposed direct hedging function learning significantly outperforms hedging based on the sensitivity of the model option function learned nonparametrically. In addition, we demonstrate that spline kernel yields better hedging performance in comparison to that of the RBF kernel. The exploratory research in this chapter clearly demonstrates the potential role of a market data-driven approach for financial derivative modeling and risk management.

However, we also notice the positive gain ratios (2.3.17) are smaller for monthly hedging in comparison to daily and weekly hedging for the synthetic data. In addition, when testing on real market S&P 500 index option with the  $DKL_{SPL}$  model and the feature set #2, we observed the similar phenomenon as it is for the synthetic scenario: the gain ratio decreases when we move from daily hedging to weekly and monthly hedging. The details of the real data comparison can be found in [131] and will be discussed in details in chapter 5.

We suspect that neither the feature set #1 nor the feature set #2 is enough to learn a sufficient data-driven local hedging model for longer period such as weekly and monthly. We are thus motivated to enhance the data-driven local hedging model using the RNN framework by adding the following components to include more features in computing the hedging position:

- Feature selection process.
- Sequential feature extraction process.

We demonstrate using real S&P 500 index option data that such enhancement greatly improve the local hedging performance. Besides, the  $GRU_{\delta}$  proposed in Chapter 4 is more computational efficient enabling us to update the model more frequently to incorporate market changes. Details of the enhanced data-driven local hedging model  $GRU_{\delta}$  will be discussed in chapter 4. The experimental results of  $DKL_{SPL}$  and  $GRU_{\delta}$  on real S&P500 index option data will be discussed in chapter 5.

## Chapter 4

# Data-Driven Sequential Learning Framework for Local Hedging Risk

In chapter 3, we have discussed the exploratory data-driven kernel hedging model  $DKL_{SPL}$  [131]. However, we believe that the data-driven hedging learning approach in [131] can potentially benefit from further improvements in a few directions. Firstly, Nian et al. [131] only use moneyness, time-to-expiry, and Black–Scholes delta as features to predict the hedging position. In practice, since both the underlying and options markets have complex price dynamics, feature extraction and feature selection can potentially further enhance hedging performance. Secondly, when predicting the hedging position at the rebalancing time  $t$ , only attributes observed at  $t$  are used as features in [131]. However, a financial market exhibits volatility clustering, describing a positive, significant, and slowly decaying volatility autocorrelation [120]. For example, a generalized autoregressive conditionally heteroskedastic (GARCH) model has been proposed for option pricing because of its capability in better characterizing asset returns [94]. It has been shown that the option pricing function under a GARCH model depends not only on the current underlying price but also on the observed underlying price history [54, 94]. This suggests that the information immediately prior to the rebalancing time should be relevant in determining the hedging position at the rebalancing time. Thirdly, the mean squared error is used as the loss function in [131] but a more appropriate robust objective function and framework may lead to a more stable optimal learning as the market shifts between crisis and normal regimes. Lastly, when a kernel data-driven model needs to be updated frequently, e.g., daily, it is computationally prohibitive to conduct backtesting over a long time period (e.g., a decade). Consequently the regularized spline kernel network is only updated monthly in [131]. To accurately assess the potential of a data-driven hedging approach, a model which is sufficiently computationally efficient needs to be considered to allow more frequent updating in a back-testing study of a long time horizon.

To incorporate sequential information in the hedging model, we use RNN, a feed-forward neural networks augmented with edges that connect adjacent steps. In the early 1980s, Hopfield [98] introduced RNN for sequential pattern recognitions. Jordan [108] and Elman [62] developed basic architectures for RNN with a group of neural networks that have a "memory" to capture past information. This can be beneficial in time series applications.

Training RNN is similar to training the traditional neural network, with the Stochastic Gradient Descent (SGD) as the primary optimization tool. The Back Propagation Through Time (BPTT) algorithm is used to calculate gradients. However, vanishing and exploding gradients [97] can occur when back-propagating errors across many steps, which pose challenges for standard RNN architectures to learn long-term dependence between steps. The Long Short-Term Memory (LSTM) [96] model and the Gated Recurrent Unit (GRU) model [35] are subsequently proposed to address issues of vanishing and exploding gradients. LSTM and GRU utilize a gate structure with element-wise operations, which can retain information in memory for a longer period. This alleviates the problem of vanishing and exploding gradients [96]. GRU and LSTM models are shown to perform better than the standard RNN model [35], although performances of GRU and LSTM are comparable. Since GRU has fewer parameters than LSTM and usually require less training data [173], we use the GRU in the proposed encode-decoder hedging model  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ .

## 4.1 The Proposed $\text{GRU}_\delta$ for market data-driven hedging

### 4.1.1 Local Discrete Hedging GRU Model

Figure 4.1 depicts the proposed local discrete GRU hedging model  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ , which uses an encoder-decoder structure to combine the local and sequential features, similar to the sequence to sequence (seq2seq) models [35]. This model uses both the local features at the hedging time and the sequential features, which encode information immediately before the hedging time.

Consider a data instance at the hedging time  $t$ , strike  $K$ , and expiry  $T$ . Let the associated change of the market option price be  $\Delta V_{t,T,K}^{mkt}$  and underlying price change be  $\Delta S_t$ , as in (2.1.1). Assume that at the hedging time  $t$ , we have local features vector  $\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K} \in \mathbb{R}^{d_l}$  which records local information at the hedging time  $t$  for hedging the option with expiry  $T$  and strike  $K$ .

Let  $\Delta t_d$  denote the time interval for sequential information recording. In the subsequent empirical study, the interval  $\Delta t_d$  equals one-day. We denote the sequential features recording the daily history for hedging the option with expiry  $T$  and strike  $K$  as

$$\mathbf{Y}_t^{T,K} = [\mathbf{y}_{t-N\Delta t_d}^{T,K}, \dots, \mathbf{y}_t^{T,K}]$$

For notational simplicity, we denote  $\tau_i = t - (N + 1 - i)\Delta t_d$  with  $i = 1, \dots, N + 1$ , we thus have:

$$\mathbf{Y}_t^{T,K} = [\mathbf{y}_{\tau_1}^{T,K}, \dots, \mathbf{y}_{\tau_{N+1}}^{T,K}]$$

The vector  $\mathbf{y}_{\tau_i}^{T,K} \in \mathbb{R}^{d_s}$  has  $d_s$  features at time  $\tau_i$  in the input sequential feature. Thus  $d_l$  is the dimension for the local feature  $\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}$ ,  $d_s$  is the dimension for the sequential feature  $\mathbf{Y}_t^{T,K}$ , and  $N + 1$  is the length of the sequential feature sequence.



The encoder transforms information from the sequential feature  $\mathbf{Y}_t^{T,K}$  to a fixed-sized vector  $\hat{\mathbf{h}}_E$  and the decoder makes the final prediction based on both  $\hat{\mathbf{h}}_E$  and the local feature  $\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}$ . The overall structure of the proposed model is illustrated in Figure 4.1. Next we discuss each component of the proposed encoder-decoder model in details.

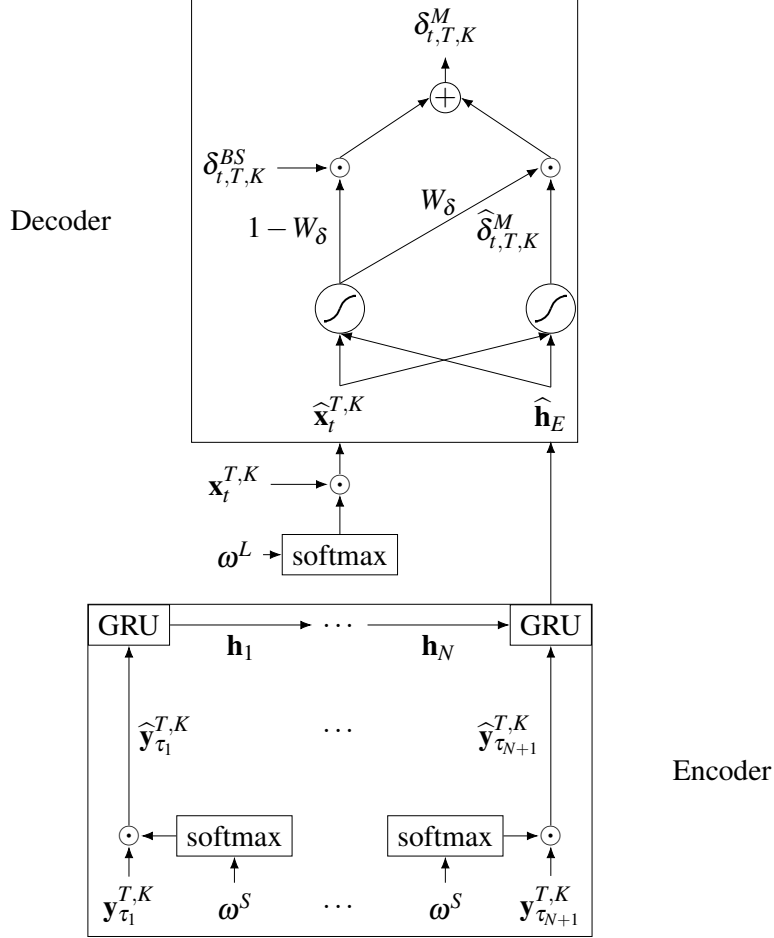


Figure 4.1:  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ : GRU encode-decoder hedging model. The encoder summarizes the time series  $\mathbf{Y}_t^{T,K} = [\mathbf{y}_{\tau_1}^{T,K}, \dots, \mathbf{y}_{\tau_{N+1}}^{T,K}]$  as a succinct vector  $\hat{\mathbf{h}}_E$ . The decoder outputs the hedging position based on the vector  $\hat{\mathbf{h}}_E$  and the local feature vector  $\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}$  observed at the hedging time  $t$ . More specifically, in the decoder, a candidate output  $\hat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M$  is firstly produced. The final output  $\delta_{t,T,K}^M$  is computed based on the linear combination of BS delta  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}$  and the candidate output  $\hat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M$ . The combination weight is determined by  $W_\delta$ . The feature weight  $\omega^L$  and  $\omega^S$  are used to produce the weighted local feature and  $\hat{\mathbf{x}}_t^{T,K}$  and weighted sequential feature  $\hat{\mathbf{y}}_\tau^{T,K}$  respectively. The weighting acts as a feature selection process. Each edge in the graph has an arrow on it, pointing from a node whose output is used by the node pointed by the arrow as an input.

### 4.1.2 Feature Selection via Embedded Feature Weighting

Feature selection improves machine learning performance by eliminating noise and providing better interpretability. While various feature selection frameworks have been proposed, we consider the feature weighting method [158], which embeds feature selection in the SVM training. This embedded feature weighting method is shown to outperform other state-of-the-art embedded feature selection methods [158]. We adopt a similar feature weighting embedding technique in the discrete GRU model to conduct feature selections on both the local feature  $\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}$  and the sequential feature  $\mathbf{Y}_t^{T,K}$ . Features are first weighted and then fed into the encoder and decoder as inputs. Feature weights are optimized during model training.

We use a softmax function to generate a normalized feature weighting vector. For the local feature  $\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K} \in \mathbb{R}^{d_l}$ , the  $j^{\text{th}}$  component of the normalized weight vector is given by

$$\frac{\exp(\omega_j^L)}{\sum_{i=1}^{d_l} \exp(\omega_i^L)}$$

The weighted local feature vector is defined as

$$\hat{\mathbf{x}}_t^{T,K} = \frac{\exp(\omega^L)}{\sum_{i=1}^{d_l} \exp(\omega_i^L)} \odot \mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}$$

where  $\odot$  denotes the element-wise multiplication.

Similarly, for the sequential feature  $\mathbf{y}_{\tau_i}^{T,K}$ , the  $j^{\text{th}}$  component of the normalized weight vector is given by

$$\frac{\exp(\omega_j^S)}{\sum_{i=1}^{d_s} \exp(\omega_i^S)}$$

The weighted feature vector at time  $\tau_i$  is defined as

$$\hat{\mathbf{y}}_{\tau_i}^{T,K} = \frac{\exp(\omega^S)}{\sum_{j=1}^{d_s} \exp(\omega_j^S)} \odot \mathbf{y}_{\tau_i}^{T,K}$$

The weighting procedure acts as a feature selection. If a particular feature is not relevant in predicting the hedging position, the associated weight after learning is expected to be negligible.

### 4.1.3 GRU Encoder

The proposed  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  in Figure 4.1 has an one-layer GRU, which encodes the sequential feature  $\mathbf{Y}_t^{T,K}$  to a fixed-sized vector  $\hat{\mathbf{h}}_E$ . At the step  $i$ , the encoder computes the value of the hidden state  $\mathbf{h}_i$  using a GRU cell. The input at the step  $i$  of the encoder is  $\hat{\mathbf{y}}_{\tau_i}^{T,K}$ ,  $i = 1, \dots, N+1$ . The internal structure of the GRU cell is shown in Figure 4.2.

Let  $\mathbf{W}_z, \mathbf{U}_z, \mathbf{b}_z, \mathbf{W}_r, \mathbf{U}_r, \mathbf{b}_r, \mathbf{W}_h, \mathbf{U}_h, \mathbf{b}_h$  denote parameters shared by all GRU cells.

1. The **update gate** decides how much the cell updates its activation:

$$\mathbf{z}_i = \text{sigmoid}(\mathbf{W}_z \hat{\mathbf{y}}_{\tau_i}^{T,K} + \mathbf{U}_z \mathbf{h}_{i-1} + \mathbf{b}_z)$$

2. The **reset gate** decides how much information to retain from the previous hidden state  $\mathbf{h}_{i-1}$ :

$$\mathbf{r}_i = \text{sigmoid}(\mathbf{W}_r \hat{\mathbf{y}}_{\tau_i}^{T,K} + \mathbf{U}_r \mathbf{h}_{i-1} + \mathbf{b}_r)$$

3. The **candidate** hidden state value  $\hat{\mathbf{h}}_i$  is computed from the current input  $\hat{\mathbf{y}}_{\tau_i}^{T,K}$ , previous hidden state  $\mathbf{h}_{i-1}$ , and the reset value  $\mathbf{r}_i$ :

$$\hat{\mathbf{h}}_i = \tanh(\mathbf{W}_h \hat{\mathbf{y}}_{\tau_i}^{T,K} + \mathbf{U}_h (\mathbf{r}_i \odot \mathbf{h}_{i-1}) + \mathbf{b}_h)$$

4. The **output** hidden state value  $\mathbf{h}_i$  is computed based on a weighted combination of the previous activation  $\mathbf{h}_{i-1}$  and the candidate activation  $\hat{\mathbf{h}}_i$ :

$$\mathbf{h}_i = (1 - \mathbf{z}_i) \odot \mathbf{h}_{i-1} + \mathbf{z}_i \odot \hat{\mathbf{h}}_i$$

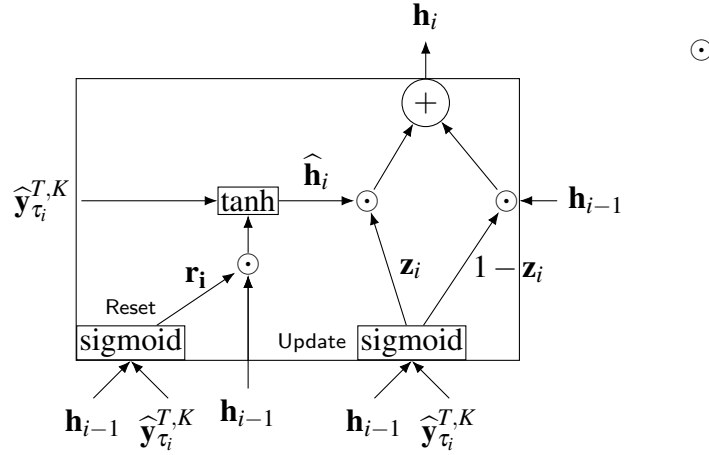


Figure 4.2: Illustration of the GRU cell. At step  $i$ , GRU cell produces a vector  $\mathbf{h}_i$  as the current hidden states based on the hidden states produced from the previous steps  $\mathbf{h}_{i-1}$  and the input  $\hat{\mathbf{y}}_{\tau_i}^{T,K}$ . The reset unit produces the weight  $\mathbf{r}_i$  which determines how much information is retained from  $\mathbf{h}_{i-1}$ . The final output from the GRU cell  $\mathbf{h}_i$  is computed based on a weighted combination of the previous activation  $\mathbf{h}_{i-1}$  and the candidate activation  $\hat{\mathbf{h}}_i$ , where the combination weight  $\mathbf{z}_i$  is produced by the update unit. Each edge in the graph has an arrow on it, pointing from a node whose output is used by the node pointed by the arrow as an input.

The hidden state at the last step  $\mathbf{h}_{N+1}$ , corresponding to time  $\tau_{N+1} = t$ , is supplied to the decoder as the fixed size vector  $\hat{\mathbf{h}}_E$ , which extracts relevant information in  $\mathbf{Y}_t^{T,K}$ .

#### 4.1.4 Decoder

The decoder combines the output of the encoder from the sequential feature  $\mathbf{Y}_t^{T,K}$  at the hedging time  $t$  with the current local feature  $\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}$ . It uses one neural network to first compute a candidate output  $\widehat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M$ , based on both the weighted local input  $\widehat{\mathbf{x}}_t^{T,K}$  and the fixed size vector  $\widehat{\mathbf{h}}_E$  :

$$\widehat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M = \text{sigmoid}(\mathbf{v}_{out}^T \tanh(\mathbf{U}_{out} \widehat{\mathbf{h}}_E + \mathbf{W}_{out} \widehat{\mathbf{x}}_t^{T,K} + \mathbf{b}_{out})).$$

The the output gate value  $W_\delta$  is given by another neural network, based on both the weighted local input  $\widehat{\mathbf{x}}_t^{T,K}$  and the fixed size vector  $\widehat{\mathbf{h}}_E$  :

$$W_\delta = \text{sigmoid}(\mathbf{v}_{Gate}^T \tanh(\mathbf{U}_{Gate} \widehat{\mathbf{h}}_E + \mathbf{W}_{Gate} \widehat{\mathbf{x}}_t^{T,K} + \mathbf{b}_{Gate})). \quad (4.1.1)$$

The practitioner's BS delta encapsulates a significant portion of the sensitivity of the option price to the underlying and has been adopted in option hedging practice. Therefore we use BS implied volatility delta as a pre-trained model in the designed  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  to utilize both local and sequential features to minimize hedge risk. Specifically, the output of the proposed  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  is a linear combination of the candidate output  $\widehat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M$  and the BS delta  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}$  computed from the implied volatility at the hedging time  $t$  for the option with expiry  $T$  and strike  $K$ . In addition, different combination formulae are used when training for different types of options. For hedging a call option, the final output from  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  is :

$$\delta_{t,T,K}^M = \widehat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M \times W_\delta + \delta_{t,T,K}^{BS} \times (1 - W_\delta) \quad (4.1.2)$$

For hedging a put option, the final output from the model is:

$$\delta_{t,T,K}^M = -\widehat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M \times W_\delta + \delta_{t,T,K}^{BS} \times (1 - W_\delta) \quad (4.1.3)$$

where  $\widehat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M$  is the candidate output. When  $W_\delta = 0$ ,  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}$  is the output and, when  $W_\delta = 1$ , the output is the candidate  $\widehat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M$ . The combination weight  $W_\delta$  is defined in (4.1.1). The sigmoid function is used as the final activation function because, under the Black-Scholes-Merton framework [19], the range of the hedging position for call options is  $[0, 1]$  and the range of the hedging position for put options is  $[-1, 0]$ . It can be easily shown that  $\delta_{t,T,K}^M$ , given by (4.1.2), is within  $[0, 1]$  and  $\delta_{t,T,K}^M$ , given by (4.1.3), is within  $[-1, 0]$ .

#### 4.1.5 Robust Loss Function

At the hedging time  $t_i$ , for the data instance  $i$  with strike  $K_i$ , and expiry  $T_i$ , the local discrete hedging loss is:

$$\text{loss}_i = \Delta V_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{mkt} - \Delta S_{t_i} \delta_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^M$$

where  $\delta_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^M$  is the corresponding final output from  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ ,  $\Delta S_{t_i}$  denotes the change in the market underlying price, and  $\Delta V_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{mkt}$  denotes the change in the market option price, see (2.1.1). Let  $M$  be the number of data instances. The objective function used in the data-driven regularized kernel hedging model in [131] is the mean squared loss,

$$MSE = \frac{1}{2M} \sum_{i=1}^M \text{loss}_i^2. \quad (4.1.4)$$

Since the quadratic error function is sensitive to outliers, in this work, we additionally incorporate the Huber loss function [100] below in the proposed  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ :

$$HE = \frac{1}{M} \sum_{i=1}^M \text{Huber}(\text{loss}_i),$$

where  $\text{Huber}(\cdot)$  is as defined below:

$$\text{Huber}(\text{loss}, \mathcal{T}) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2} \text{loss}^2, & \text{if } |\text{loss}| \leq \mathcal{T} \\ \mathcal{T}(|\text{loss}| - \frac{1}{2} \mathcal{T}), & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

The Huber loss [100] has been shown to be more robust than the squared loss with respect to outliers, when the threshold parameter  $\mathcal{T}$  is carefully chosen *a priori*. In the context of machine learning, the parameter  $\mathcal{T}$  can be tuned but this can be computationally expensive. In the proposed  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ , since delta from the BS model with the implied volatility is used as a pre-trained model, we adaptively set the thresholding parameter  $\mathcal{T}$  to be absolute value of the hedging error from the Black–Scholes delta of the data instance  $i$ , i.e.,

$$\mathcal{T}_i = |\Delta V_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{mkt} - \Delta S_{t_i} \delta_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{BS}| \quad (4.1.5)$$

where  $\delta_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{BS}$  is the Black–Scholes delta using implied volatility for data instance  $i$ . The modified Huber loss becomes

$$M\text{Huber}(\text{loss}_i, \mathcal{T}_i) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2} \text{loss}_i^2, & \text{if } |\text{loss}_i| \leq \mathcal{T}_i \\ \mathcal{T}_i(|\text{loss}_i| - \frac{1}{2} \mathcal{T}_i), & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Using the Huber loss with the adaptive thresholding parameter in (4.1.5), the objective for the proposed  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  is:

$$MHE = \frac{1}{M} \sum_{i=1}^M M\text{Huber}(\text{loss}_i, \mathcal{T}_i) \quad (4.1.6)$$

## 4.2 Training $\text{GRU}_\delta$

Next we discuss training  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ , including initialization, pre-training, optimization, and regularization.

### 4.2.1 Initialization

When training a RNN model, an initial weight matrix is typically chosen as a random orthogonal matrix. Since the orthogonal initialization can often speed up training [113], all the weight matrices are initialized as orthogonal random matrices in training  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ . The random orthogonal matrices are Householder transformations of random matrices [113].

### 4.2.2 Optimization

First-order optimization methods, such as stochastic gradient descent (SGD) and its extensions, are the most widely used optimization methods in machine learning, due to their low computational costs. Despite their wide usage, well-known deficiencies when training highly non-convex objective functions, including relatively-slow convergence, sensitivity to hyper-parameter values (e.g., learning rate), stagnation at high training errors, and difficulty in escaping flat regions and saddle points [171].

More recently, improved SGD methods such as ADAM [109], have been proposed. These methods seem to achieve significantly better solutions compared with earlier SGD. However, it has recently been empirically observed in [142] that these algorithms sometimes fail to converge to a first-order critical point due to the exponential moving average used in the algorithms.

Since the data size and the number of the parameters in  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  are relatively small (which is a distinguishing characteristics of many financial data mining problems), it is computationally feasible to apply a second order optimization method. Furthermore, the recently proposed trust-region sub-problem solver [114] computes the trust region sub-problem solution iteratively requiring only Hessian-vector products. Consequently we use a trust region method, which is shown in Algorithm 1 when training  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ . The meta-parameters for trust-region algorithm are shown in Table 4.1.

$\mathcal{R}_0$	$\varepsilon_\theta$	$\varepsilon_r$	$\eta_{r_1}$	$\eta_{r_2}$	$\gamma_u$	$\gamma_d$
1.0	$10^{-5}$	$10^{-8}$	0.25	0.75	2	0.5

Table 4.1: Meta-parameters for the trust-region algorithm. The trust-region algorithm is used for training all the data-driven models based on neural network framework in this thesis.

### 4.2.3 Pre-training and Regularization

We use early stopping as the regularization [140]. At each training date, we reserve a fraction of the observed data to be the validation set. The rest of the observed data is used as the training set. The performance on the validation set is used to determine when over-fitting begins. Let  $\theta$  denote the set of parameters to be learned for the proposed  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ . After each training step

---

**Algorithm 1:** Trust-region Algorithm

---

**Input:**  $\theta_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$ : initial vector of parameters.

$Obj(\theta)$ : the objective function (For  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ , we use either (4.1.4) or (4.1.6). For  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$ , we use (6.2.2). For  $\text{GRU}_{\text{LOCAL}}$ , we use (6.2.2). )

$\mathcal{R}_0$ : initial trust region radius

$\varepsilon_\theta$ : tolerance for the norm of the gradient

$\varepsilon_r$ : tolerance for the trust region radius

$\eta_{r_1}$ : first threshold for update the trust region radius

$\eta_{r_2}$ : second threshold for update the trust region radius

$\gamma_u > 1$ : ratio to increase the trust-region radius

$\gamma_d < 1$ : ratio to decrease the trust-region radius

**Output:**  $\theta^*$ : the vector of parameters that minimize the objective function  $Obj(\theta)$

**begin**

$k = 0$ ;

**while**  $\|\nabla Obj(\theta_k)\|_2 \geq \varepsilon_\theta$  and  $\mathcal{R}_k \geq \varepsilon_r$  **do**  
    solve the trust-region subproblem [114]:

$$\begin{aligned} s_k^* &= \underset{s}{\operatorname{argmin}} m_k(s) = Obj(\theta_k) + s^T \nabla Obj(\theta_k) + \frac{1}{2} s^T \nabla^2 Obj(\theta_k) s \\ &\quad \text{sub to } \|s\|_2 \leq \mathcal{R}_k \end{aligned}$$

define

$$\mathcal{P}_k = \frac{Obj(\theta_k) - Obj(\theta_k + s_k^*)}{Obj(\theta_k) - m_k(s_k^*)}$$

Update the radius: **if**  $\eta_{r_2} > \mathcal{P}_k < \eta_{r_1}$  **then**

$$\theta_{k+1} = \theta_k + s_k^*$$

**else**

$$\theta_{k+1} = \theta_k$$

**end**

$$\mathcal{R}_{k+1} = \begin{cases} \gamma_u \|s_k^*\|_2, & \text{if } \mathcal{P}_k < \eta_{r_1} \\ \mathcal{R}_k, & \text{if } \eta_{r_1} \leq \mathcal{P}_k \leq \eta_{r_2} \\ \max(\gamma_u \|s_k^*\|_2, \mathcal{R}_k), & \text{if } \mathcal{P}_k > \eta_{r_2} \end{cases}$$

$k=k+1$

**end**

$$\theta^* = \theta_k$$

**end**

---

$k$ , the model performance is evaluated on the validation set and the associated parameters  $\theta_k$  is recorded. Model training optimization is performed on the training set until the trust-region optimizer terminates. The parameters that achieve the best performance on the validation set is used to predict the hedging position for the testing data instances.

For  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ , the training optimization problem is nonconvex, which can benefit from a good initial model. We choose the initial model for the training problem by matching the output of  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  to the pre-trained BS model  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}$ . Specifically, we determine the initial model for training optimization by solving the nonlinear least square problem below,

$$\min \frac{1}{2M} \sum_{i=1}^M (\delta_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^M - \delta_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{BS})^2, \quad (4.2.1)$$

where the starting point for (4.2.1) is a set of randomly initialized weight matrices, as described in section 4.2.1.

Using a solution to (4.2.1) as the initial model, we train  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  with the robust objective function (4.1.6). Recall that the output of  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ , either (4.1.2) or (4.1.3), is a linear combination of the candidate output  $\hat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M$  and the BS delta  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}$  computed from the implied volatility. When  $W_\delta$  approaches 0, the output of  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  converges to  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}$  as the output. When  $W_\delta$  approaches 1,  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  outputs candidate  $\hat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M$ . This simple combination structure allows the pre-training phase to be finished in just a few training steps.<sup>1</sup> The pre-training stage guarantees that the initial performance of the model on the validation set is close to  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}$ . If the output from the model after training performs worse than  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}$  on the validation set, we use the initial model after pre-training.

Additionally the validation set is also used to select whether to use the mean square objective function (4.1.4) or the modified Huber loss objective (4.1.6). The model trained with the objective function that performs better on the validation set is used when predicting the hedging position of the testing data instances, which are unobserved at the time of training.

#### 4.2.4 Model Re-use and Re-initialization

In contrast to the regularized kernel method in [131], one advantage of the proposed  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  is that the parameters from one trained model can be readily reused as the starting point for the model training on a subsequent rebalancing day. This allows a model to be updated more frequently, adapting to market changes without completely rebuilding a model. The kernel method in [131], on the other hand, recomputes the kernel matrix at each rebalancing time, which requires  $O(m^3)$

---

<sup>1</sup>Note that we will also stop the pre-training when  $W_\delta > 0.975$  or  $W_\delta < 0.025$ . This is because, when we have  $W_\delta > 0.975$  or  $W_\delta < 0.025$ , due to saturating gradient problem of the sigmoid function, the initial gradient, when training with actual local hedging objective, will be very small. This will slow down the first few learning steps when training with actual local hedging objective.



computation assuming a completely new kernel matrix. Thus, updating the model frequently using the kernel method in [131] is computationally prohibitive.

An artificial neural network is known to potentially suffer catastrophic interference or catastrophic forgetting [124], i.e., a model forgets completely and abruptly previously learned information upon observing new information. When this happens, the resulting broken model usually has poor generalization ability. If a broken model with poor generalization ability is allowed to be continually updated, the performance of all the future models may be negatively affected. Thus, whenever a worse performance, in comparison to  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}$ , is observed on a validation set, we re-initialize the parameters of  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  and pre-train the model again. This avoids continually updating the broken model. If after model re-initialization and training, the performance of the proposed  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  remains worse than that of  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}$  on the validation set, we simply output  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}$ .

In summary, we initialize the model as described in section 4.2.1 and 4.2.3 on the first testing date. When we train the model, we reuse the parameters from the previously trained model as the starting point unless the performance of the proposed  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  is worse than that of  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}$ , in which case we re-initialize the parameters of the proposed  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  and train the model again.

### 4.3 Alternative Data-Driven Hedging Models Under Neural Network Framework

Lastly, before jumping into the real data experimental results for local discrete hedging in Chapter 5, we introduce the following supplementary models:

1. To gain insights on the roles of the decoder and encoder in the proposed  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ , we also consider a decoder only model  $\text{NN}_\delta$ , which corresponds to removing the encoder from  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  in Figure 4.3. We train  $\text{NN}_\delta$  in the same way as described in section 4.2.
2. To gain insights on the role of output gate and robust Huber loss, we remove the output gate part of the decoder model. The resulting model is shown in Figure 4.4. In other words, the output  $\delta^M$  is purely based  $\hat{\mathbf{h}}_E$  and  $\hat{\mathbf{x}}_t^{T,K}$ :

$$\delta_{t,T,K}^M = \text{sigmoid}(\mathbf{v}_{out}^T \tanh(\mathbf{U}_{out} \hat{\mathbf{h}}_E + \mathbf{W}_{out} \hat{\mathbf{x}}_t^{T,K} + \mathbf{b}_{out})).$$

We denote the model shown in Figure 4.4 as  $\text{GRU}_c$ . The training procedure of  $\text{GRU}_c$  is slightly different from  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ :

- Early stopping, pre-training, and model re-initialization mentioned in section 4.2 are not used.
- The validation set is not needed since early stopping and model re-initialization are not used.
- The objective function is fixed to be the mean squared loss.

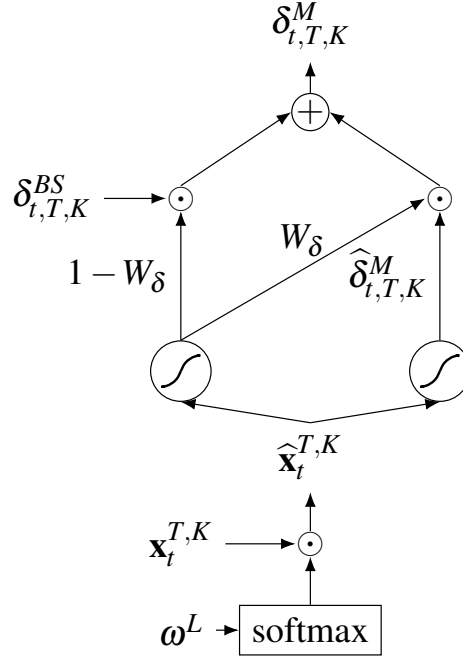


Figure 4.3:  $\text{NN}_\delta$ : decoder GRU only. This simplified model only retains the decoder. The decoder computes the hedging position solely based on the information vector  $\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}$  observed at time  $t$ . A candidate output  $\hat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M$  is produced. The final output  $\delta_{t,T,K}^M$  is computed based on the linear combination of BS delta  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}$  and the candidate output  $\hat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M$ . The combination weight is determined by  $W_\delta$ . The feature weight  $\omega^L$  is used to produce the weighted local feature  $\hat{\mathbf{x}}_t^{T,K}$ . The weighting acts as a feature selection process. Each edge in the graph has an arrow on it, pointing from a node whose output is used by the node pointed by the arrow as an input.

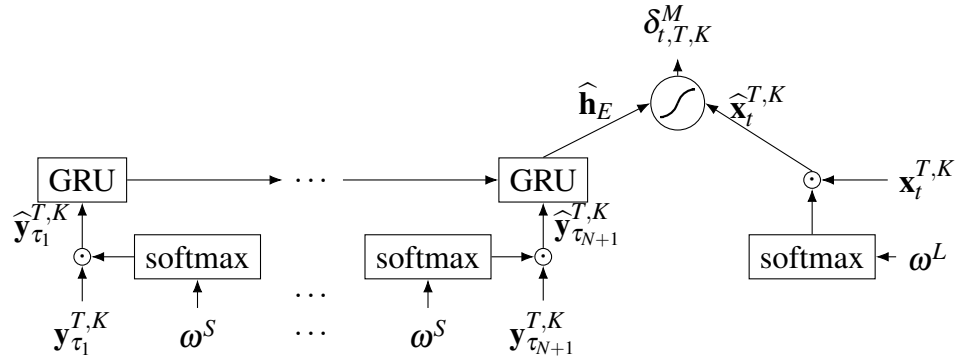


Figure 4.4: GRU<sub>c</sub>: This simplified model removes the output gate in the decoder. The encoder summarizes the time series  $\mathbf{Y}_t^{T,K} = [\mathbf{y}_{\tau_1}^{T,K}, \dots, \mathbf{y}_{\tau_{N+1}}^{T,K}]$  as a succinct vector  $\hat{\mathbf{h}}_E$ . The decoder outputs the hedging position based on the vector  $\hat{\mathbf{h}}_E$  and the local feature vector  $\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}$  observed at the hedging time  $t$  directly. The output gate is removed and we do not combine the output with  $\delta_{t,T,K}^{BS}$  using linear combination as in Figure 4.1. Each edge in the graph has an arrow on it, pointing from a node whose output is used by the node pointed by the arrow as an input.

# Chapter 5

## Local Discrete Hedging Performance Comparison Using S&P 500 index Options

Using the S&P 500 (European) index option market data from January 2, 2001 to August 31, 2015, we compare hedging performance of different hedging strategies.

Following [102], we use the Gain ratio below as the evaluating measure for the hedging performance:

$$\text{GAIN} = 1 - \frac{\sum_{i=1}^m \left( (\Delta V_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{mkt} - \delta_{t_i, T_i, K_i}) \Delta S_{t_i} \right)^2}{\sum_{i=1}^m \left( (\Delta V_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{mkt} - \delta_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{BS}) \Delta S_{t_i} \right)^2},$$

where  $m$  is the total number of data instances to be evaluated. In addition, for the data instance  $i$ , corresponding to hedging option with expiry  $T_i$  and strike  $K_i$  at hedging time  $t_i$ , we recall that  $\delta_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{BS}$  is the implied Black–Scholes delta,  $\delta_{t_i, T_i, K_i}$  is the hedging position from the method under consideration, e.g., SABR delta, MV delta, and output from  $\text{DKL}_{\text{SPL}}$  or  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ . In addition  $\Delta V_{t_i, T_i, K_i}^{mkt}$  is the change in option price, and  $\Delta S_{t_i}$  is the change in the underlying price which are given by (2.1.1).

### 5.1 Data and Experimental Setting

The option data used in this study comes from the OptionMetric database and the data is processed following the same procedure described in [102]. On each day, the mid-price from the bid and ask is used as the price of the option on that day. The closing price for the underlying is regarded as the daily underlying price. Options with time-to-expiry less than 14 days are removed from the data set. The call options with the BS delta  $\delta_{t, T, K}^{BS}$  from the implied volatility outside of  $[0.05, 0.95]$  and the put options with the BS delta  $\delta_{t, T, K}^{BS}$  from implied volatility outside of  $[-0.95, -0.05]$  are also removed from the data set. These removed option prices are noisy and unreliable

since they correspond to either deeply out-of-money options, deeply in-money option, or very short term options. As in [102], the option data instances are divided into nine buckets according to the Black–Scholes delta  $\delta^{BS}$  from the implied volatility (rounded to the nearest tenth) for detailed hedging performance comparisons.

Inputs to  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ ,  $\mathbf{Y}_t^{T,K} \in \mathbb{R}^{d_s \times (N+1)}$ , are 6 sequential features and the length of each sequence is 6, i.e.,  $d_s = 6$  and  $N = 5$ . At each hedging time  $t$ , the  $\mathbf{Y}_t^{T,K}$  is the matrix recording the historical time series of the feature listed in Table 5.1. At each hedging time  $t$ , there are 10 local features

option middle price
option implied volatility
option BS delta
option BS gamma
option BS vega
moneyness

Table 5.1: Sequential features for model  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  at time  $t$  are the historical time series of the features listed in this table

$\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}$ :

moneyness
time to expiry
index close price
option bid price
option offer price
option BS delta
$\delta_{MV}$ from equation (2.3.4)
option implied volatility
option BS gamma
option BS vega

Table 5.2: Local features  $\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}$  at time  $t$  for model  $\text{GRU}_\delta$

The number of hidden states, for the single-layer GRU encoder, the neural network outputting  $\hat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M$ , and the neural network outputting  $W_\delta$  in Figure 4.1, are all set to be 5. In comparison with most RNN applications, we note we train a relatively small model and the number of data instances available for the hedging problem is also relatively small. We note that our training and testing data instances are generated from daily observations with a moving window. On each day, data instances observed in the previous 36 months are reserved as the training set and the validation set. For daily and weekly hedging, the validation consists of the data instances observed during the past 30 days. For monthly hedging, the validation set is the data instances observed during the previous 60 days. This is because, for monthly hedging, the  $\Delta S_t$  and  $\Delta V_{t,T,K}^{mkt}$  of many data instances during the last 30 days have not been observed. The data instances,

which are observed in the previous 36 months but are not used in the validation set, are used as the training set. The models are updated daily.

We note that the length of our backtest time is longer than a decade. Since learning a single  $DKL_{SPL}$  model for all options will be computationally expensive, a separate model is built for each delta bucket when training  $DKL_{SPL}$ , which has the feature set # 2

$$\{\text{MONEYNESS, TIME-TO-EXPIRY, BLACK-SCHOLES DELTA}\}.$$

In addition, we use the efficient leave-one-out cross-validation (LOOCV) as in section 3.3 to choose regularization parameter  $\lambda_P$  for  $DKL_{SPL}$ . For each month, LOOCV is used to choose a value of the regularization parameter from a candidate set:

$$\lambda_P \in \{10^7, 10^6, 10^5, 10^4, 10^3, 10^2, 10^0, 10^{-1}, 10^{-2}, 10^{-3}, 10^{-4}, 10^{-5}, 10^{-6}, 10^{-7}\}.$$

For the call option, the  $DKLs$  for each bucket is estimated using all options **traded** in a 36 months window. For the put option, there is much larger variation in the number of data instances in each bucket. To ensure a reasonable training data size, we have used a time window of 24 months for delta buckets -0.1 and -0.2, window of 36 months for delta buckets -0.3 and -0.4, window of 48 months for delta buckets -0.5 and -0.6, and window of 72 months for delta buckets -0.7, -0.8 and -0.9. Hence, the training data for puts ranges from Jan 2001 to August 31 2015. We train the direct hedging function model  $DKL_{SPL}$  using all options **traded** in a fixed time window, as described above, and determine the hedge each day in the following month using the trained model, following the same sliding training-testing window procedure in [102]. Furthermore, the  $DKL_{SPL}$  model is updated monthly due to the limitation of computationally cost.

The training set, the validation set, and the testing set are the same for  $GRU_\delta$  and  $NN_\delta$ . The training procedure is the same for  $GRU_\delta$  and  $NN_\delta$  which is described in section 4.2. In addition,  $GRU_c$  is trained using the data instances, observed in the previous 36 months and procedure described as in section 4.3.

For additional reference, we also include the performance of the MV model (2.3.4) and Bartlett delta on weekly and monthly hedging. For MV in Table 5.3 & 5.4, on each day, the model parameter,  $a, b$  and  $c$  are estimated using all traded options in a 36-month-window.<sup>1</sup>

For  $DKL_{SPL}$  and  $GRU_\delta$ , we present out-of-sample daily hedging performance test result using either traded data or all data in the database.

### 5.1.1 Weekly and Monthly Hedging Comparisons

We first present hedging comparisons for weekly and monthly hedging. We assume a period of 5-business-days for weekly hedging and a period of 20-business-days for monthly hedging. We

---

<sup>1</sup>Note that, in the OptionMetric Database, not all the option data instances are actually traded. For many data instances, the trading volumes are zero. It is not clear to us whether the reported test results in [102] are computed using all data or traded data only.

note that the MV hedging method is only considered for daily hedging in [102].

Specifically, we compare  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  with the following methods,

- $\text{GRU}_\delta$ : The sequential learning framework trained as in section 4.2.
- MV: MV hedging based on formulation (2.3.4),
- Bartlett: Bartlett corrective delta based on (2.3.16),
- $\text{DKL}_{\text{SPL}}$ : Direct spline kernel hedging method as in 3.2,
- $\text{NN}_\delta$ : NN with the decoder only described in Figure 4.3.
- $\text{GRU}_c$ : The sequential learning model excluding the output gate and trained as in section 4.3.

Table 5.3 present comparisons for calls while Table 5.4 demonstrate comparisons for puts. We further note that the parameters of MV are updated daily in this section while the parameters of MV in [102] are updated monthly. We also note that the out-of-sample results for the MV model in [102] are obtained with daily changes of the index price and option price in [102] while, in Table 5.3 and 5.4, the out-of-sample results are obtained with weekly and monthly changes of the index price and option price. The SABR model used to compute the Bartlett delta is also calibrated daily.

Delta	Comparing Model(%)											
	Weekly						Monthly					
	MV	Bartlett	$\text{DKL}_{\text{SPL}}$	$\text{NN}_\delta$	$\text{GRU}_c$	$\text{GRU}_\delta$	MV	Bartlett	$\text{DKL}_{\text{SPL}}$	$\text{NN}_\delta$	$\text{GRU}_c$	$\text{GRU}_\delta$
0.1	26.3	-16.9	38.9	35.6	36.6	<b>47.8</b>	13.5	-8.2	22.7	29.7	34.8	<b>53.9</b>
0.2	21.6	-5.6	29.0	36.4	39.6	<b>48.5</b>	16.4	0.4	23.5	38.4	38.9	<b>51.7</b>
0.3	20.1	11.9	23.5	38.6	39.7	<b>48.5</b>	17.9	2.1	24.0	40.2	41.7	<b>50.2</b>
0.4	18.1	17.3	20.8	38.7	38.9	<b>45.9</b>	16.9	2.7	21.0	38.6	42.6	<b>47.8</b>
0.5	16.0	21.7	19.9	42.3	37.5	<b>46.6</b>	15.2	5.7	13.5	36.3	42.3	<b>44.5</b>
0.6	12.1	24.1	17.3	43.4	33.5	<b>44.8</b>	12.7	8.4	14.3	36.0	40.7	<b>44.6</b>
0.7	8.1	26.3	16.8	45.6	31.1	43.9	5.9	7.5	6.1	30.2	26.3	<b>35.3</b>
0.8	3.7	25.5	12.5	39.6	31.7	<b>37.7</b>	-1.2	4.2	5.3	22.3	26.3	<b>24.8</b>
0.9	2.4	21.7	6.2	26.3	28.7	16.4	-1.8	9.8	4.1	21.1	17.3	10.5
Overall	15.1	18.6	20.2	39.9	33.5	<b>43.7</b>	13.4	4.5	16.3	35.4	38.0	<b>44.5</b>

Table 5.3: S&P 500 call options hedging comparison on traded data, bold entries indicating best Gain from  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ . The Gain ratio is a measure for the local hedging performance. The larger the gain ratio is, the better improvement the model achieves over the baseline BS delta hedging method in terms of local hedging risk. The gain ratio is reported on different delta buckets.

From Table 5.3 and Table 5.4, we observe that, overall,  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  outperforms  $\text{GRU}_c$ , MV, Bartlett,  $\text{DKL}_{\text{SPL}}$ , and  $\text{NN}_\delta$ . In addition, the hedging performance of the four data-driven models,  $\text{DKL}_{\text{SPL}}$ ,  $\text{NN}_\delta$ ,  $\text{GRU}_c$ , and  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ , is significantly better than that of the MV model and Bartlett except for put option weekly hedging where Bartlett correction performs better than  $\text{DKL}_{\text{SPL}}$ . This is not surprising since the MV formula (2.3.4) and Bartlett formula (2.3.16) are based on instantaneous hedging analysis. Furthermore, by comparing  $\text{DKL}_{\text{SPL}}$  with  $\text{NN}_\delta$ , we see that the decoder only  $\text{NN}_\delta$  still achieves significant improvement over  $\text{DKL}_{\text{SPL}}$ . The improvement possibly comes from inclusions of more local features in  $\text{NN}_\delta$  and more frequent updates of  $\text{NN}_\delta$ , timely addressing the market changes. The overall improvement of  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  over  $\text{NN}_\delta$  illustrates the important role of the GRU encoder, which incorporates sequential feature information, in weekly and monthly hedging. Lastly, the overall improvement of  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  over  $\text{GRU}_c$  illustrates the important role of the output gate, the robust huber loss and the robust training procedure in section 4.2.

Delta	Comparing Model(%)											
	Weekly						Monthly					
	MV	Bartlett	$\text{DKL}_{\text{SPL}}$	$\text{NN}_\delta$	$\text{GRU}_c$	$\text{GRU}_\delta$	MV	Bartlett	$\text{DKL}_{\text{SPL}}$	$\text{NN}_\delta$	$\text{GRU}_c$	$\text{GRU}_\delta$
-0.9	23.9	9.1	10.1	29.5	32.1	<b>34.7</b>	16.9	1.2	6.5	28.3	27.4	<b>32.6</b>
-0.8	21.5	-0.1	18.3	39.6	40.1	<b>44.2</b>	11.5	5.6	6.1	41.7	35.6	<b>49.5</b>
-0.7	19.1	0.4	20.2	44.0	39.6	<b>49.6</b>	9.6	6.7	7.3	43.4	41.1	<b>52.4</b>
-0.6	16.1	9.1	20.8	43.0	40.3	<b>51.3</b>	8.1	8.6	10.3	42.1	41.5	<b>51.6</b>
-0.5	15.3	20.9	22.4	43.4	36.1.3	<b>53.5</b>	7.7	13.2	13.9	41.2	42.7	<b>51.4</b>
-0.4	12.3	25.7	21.0	41.4	37.4.6	<b>53.2</b>	6.8	14.4	15.6	40.7	42.9	<b>53.4</b>
-0.3	9.7	29.4	22.2	38.2	37.4.6	<b>51.1</b>	4.7	13.6	19.5	34.1	42.5	<b>48.4</b>
-0.2	7.8	33.1	20.8	29.8	25.4	<b>46.3</b>	2.9	10.7	20.6	21.7	24.7	<b>44.7</b>
-0.1	4.9	30.5	19.2	15.5	10.4	<b>37.2</b>	-1.8	10.8	13.0	12.3	15.1	<b>26.8</b>
Overall	14.4	26.4	20.4	38.7	32.5	<b>49.1</b>	8.6	12.1	13.5	38.6	40.5	<b>49.5</b>

Table 5.4: S&P 500 put options hedging comparison on traded data, bold entries indicating best Gain from  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ . The Gain ratio is a measure for the local hedging performance. The larger the gain ratio is, the better improvement the model achieves over the baseline BS delta hedging method in terms of local hedging risk. The gain ratio is reported on different delta buckets.

### 5.1.2 Feature Importance

Next, we discuss feature importance in the trained model  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ . Specifically, we show how the normalized feature weight, for both the local features  $\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K}$  and for the sequential features  $\mathbf{X}$ , changes from Jan 2007 to Aug 2015. The normalized feature weight vector are:

$$\frac{\exp(\omega^L)}{\sum_{i=1}^{d_l} \exp(\omega_i^L)}$$



and

$$\frac{\exp(\omega^S)}{\sum_{i=1}^{d_s} \exp(\omega_i^S)}$$

respectively. The feature score, shown in Figure 5.1 & 5.2, represents the normalized feature weights averaged over a calendar month for the model trained using traded data instance. Note that the model is updated daily and the normalized feature weights vary with the training date.

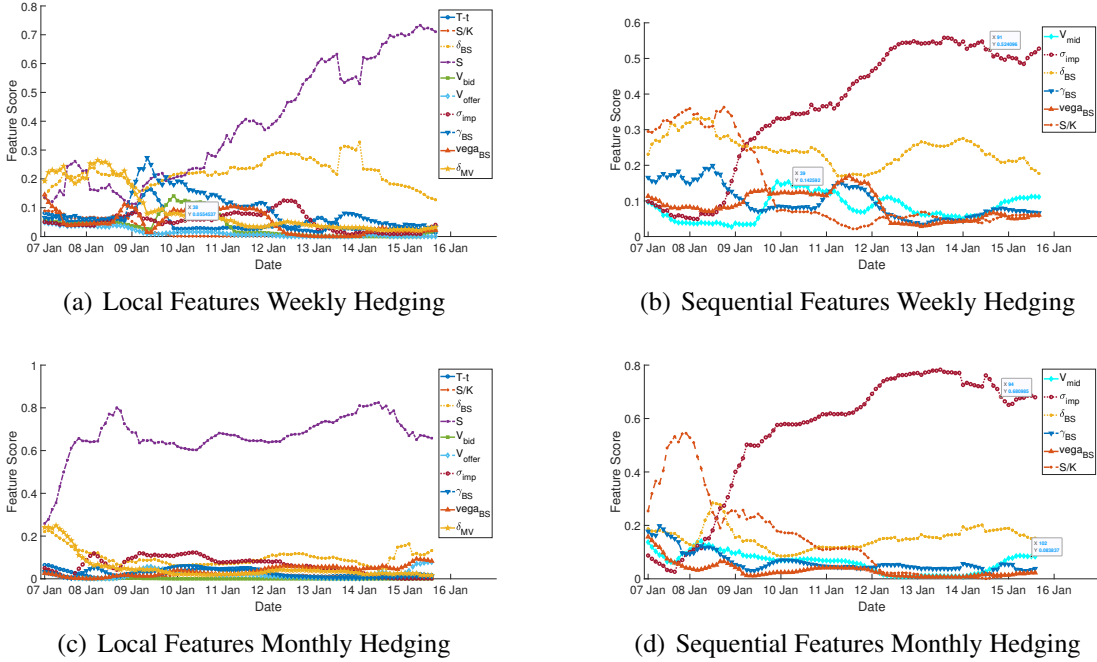


Figure 5.1: Feature scores for weekly and monthly hedging models  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  on traded S&P500 call option data.

From subplots (a) and (b) in Figure 5.1, it can be observed that, for weekly hedging call options, the index price  $S$  is ranked as the most important local feature after Jan 2010. Moreover, the average weight for the index price  $S$  exhibits an increasing trend after Jan 2009. The past implied volatility sequence is ranked as the most important sequential feature after March 2009. The average weight for the past implied volatility sequence also exhibits an increasing trend after Jan 2009. From subplots (c) and (d) in Figure 5.1, it can be observed that, for monthly hedging the call option, the index price  $S$  is always ranked as the most important local feature. In addition, the average weight of the index price  $S$  is always higher than 0.5 after Jan 2008. The past implied volatility sequence is always ranked as the most important sequential feature after Jan 2009. The average weight for the past implied volatility sequence also is always greater than 0.4 after Jan 2008.

For the put option, the situation is slightly different. From subplots (a) and (b) in Figure 5.2, we can see that, for weekly hedging the put option, the index price  $S$  is often ranked as the most

important local feature. The past implied volatility sequence and the past BS delta sequence are identified as the two most important sequential features. From subplots (a) and (b) in Figure 5.2, we can see that, for monthly hedging put options, the index price  $S$  is ranked as the most important local feature after Jan 2008. The past implied volatility sequence is ranked as the most important sequential feature after Jan 2013.

Overall, the index price  $S$  has often been identified as an important local feature for hedging both call and put options. Since the BS delta of the implied volatility is one of the local features, this confirms the fact that the BS delta does not capture all dependence on the underlying. In addition, the past implied volatility has often been identified as an important sequential feature for hedging both calls and puts.

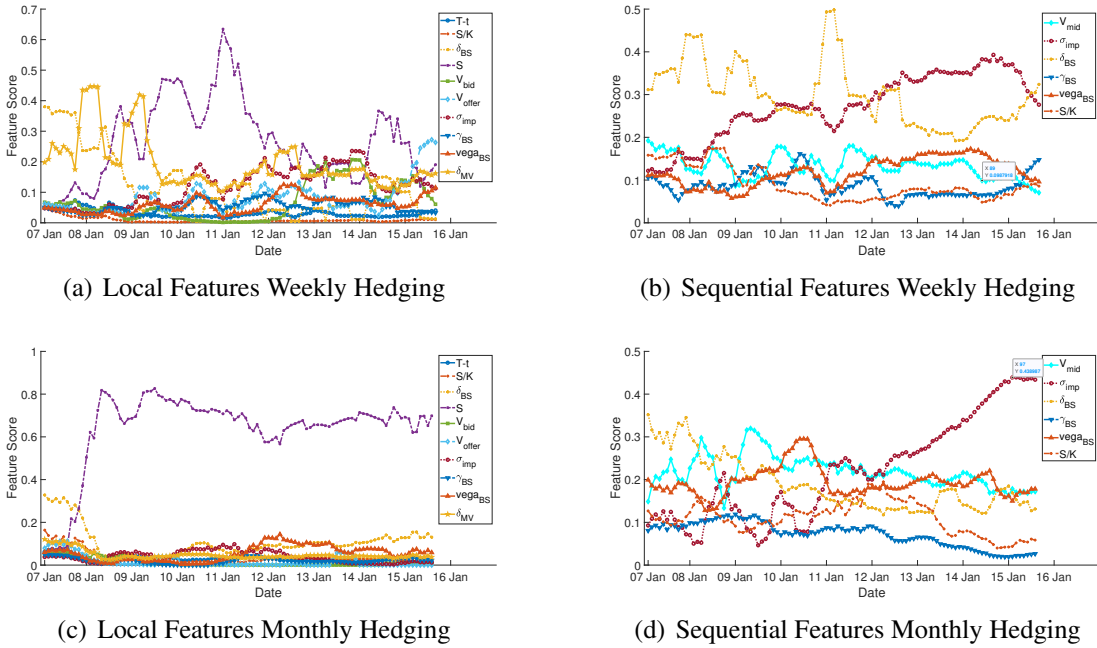


Figure 5.2: Feature score for weekly and monthly hedging models  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  on traded S&P500 put option data

### 5.1.3 Daily Hedging Comparison

In section 5.1.1 - 5.1.2, we have presented hedging comparisons for weekly and monthly hedging. Now we compare the proposed  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  with the following methods for daily hedging,

- MV: MV hedging based on formulation (2.3.4),
- LVF: MV hedging in [102] from local volatility function based on formulation (2.3.12),
- SABR<sub>MV</sub> : MV hedging in [102] from SABR model based on formulation (2.3.18),

- $\delta^{BS}$ : implied volatility Black–Scholes delta,
- Bartlett: Bartlett formula based on (2.3.16),
- $DKL_{SPL}$ : Direct spline kernel hedging method as in 3.2.

We have omitted  $NN_\delta$  and  $GRU_c$  in the daily hedging comparison since it has been shown to underperform  $GRU_\delta$ . But we have added LVF and  $SABR_{MV}$  since they are based on instantaneous hedging analysis and are more suitable for daily hedging.

Since the same S&P 500 index option data from the OptionMetric Database is used here, we simply quote the results presented in [102] for MV, LVF, and  $SABR_{MV}$ , and the results presented in [131] for  $DKL_{SPL}$ .

As stated in [102] and section 2.3.1, the  $SABR_{MV}$  model is calibrated daily, from which the hedge position is determined and applied the next day. For LVF, the partial derivative of the expected implied volatility to the underlying is calculated from the slope of the observed implied volatility smile daily. For MV, the model parameter,  $a, b$  and  $c$  are estimated using all options in a 36-month-window and then applied to determine the hedging position daily in the subsequent month.

Table 5.5 presents daily hedging comparisons for call options. From Table 5.5, using either traded data or all data for testing,  $GRU_\delta$  outperforms the minimum variance hedging methods reported in [102] in the overall performance. For most delta buckets, delta greater than or equal to 0.3, the performance of  $GRU_\delta$  is better than those of the minimum variance hedging methods. However, for the bucket of the delta value 0.1 or 0.2, the performance is slightly worse.

In addition, from Table 5.5, the performance of the  $GRU_\delta$  model is slightly better than that of the kernel hedging  $DKL_{SPL}$  in overall performance. For the the delta buckets 0.3-0.9,  $GRU_\delta$  outperforms the direct kernel hedging  $DKL_{SPL}$ . However,  $GRU_\delta$  performs slightly worse for the delta bucket 0.1 and 0.2.

Table 5.6 presents daily hedging comparisons for put options. Table 5.6 shows that both overall performance and the performances for different delta buckets of the  $GRU_\delta$  model are better than those from minimum variance hedging methods in [102] and the direct kernel hedging  $DKL_{SPL}$ , for testing result using all data. Similarly to the call,  $GRU_\delta$  has model bold entries in most of delta buckets, indicating outperforming other methods.

Both  $GRU_\delta$  and  $DKL_{SPL}$  are non-parametric data-driven hedging methods, with a main difference in features included. The hedging performance comparison between the two suggests that including the sequential features and more local features improves the overall hedging performance slightly for daily hedging.

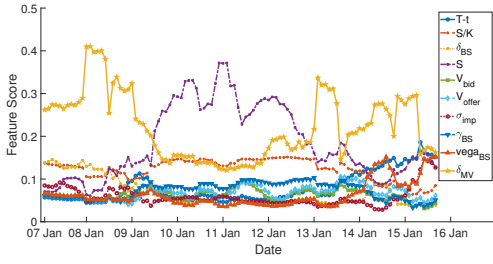
We similarly demonstrate feature importance in Figure 5.3&5.4 for daily hedging. From Figure 5.3, it can be observed that, for daily hedging call options, MV delta  $\delta^{MV}$  and index price  $S$  are the local features that are often ranked as the most important under  $GRU_\delta$ . The history of BS delta  $\delta^{BS}$  is ranked as the most important sequential feature during most of the months. The past implied volatility sequence is often ranked as the second most important sequential feature.

Delta	MV (%)	SABR <sub>MV</sub> (%)	LVF(%)	Bartlett		Data-Driven Model			
				Traded	All	DKL <sub>SPL</sub> (%)		GRU <sub>δ</sub> (%)	
						Traded	All	Traded	All
0.1	42.1	39.4	42.6	29.0	35.1	47.1	48.6	32.3	33.8
0.2	35.8	33.4	36.2	28.2	32.3	37.8	40.0	33.7	36.4
0.3	31.1	29.4	30.3	27.7	28.9	34.1	35.1	34.1	<b>35.5</b>
0.4	28.5	26.3	26.7	28.7	27.3	32.3	32.0	<b>33.7</b>	<b>34.2</b>
0.5	27.1	24.9	25.5	26.9	26.7	29.3	29.4	<b>35.1</b>	<b>33.0</b>
0.6	25.7	25.2	25.2	28.3	26.6	29.9	28.4	<b>35.6</b>	<b>32.1</b>
0.7	25.4	24.7	25.8	28.5	26.4	29.0	26.8	<b>31.8</b>	<b>29.7</b>
0.8	24.1	23.5	25.4	23.1	24.9	25.9	24.7	<b>28.6</b>	<b>26.5</b>
0.9	16.6	17.0	16.9	14.0	15.6	17.7	13.9	<b>19.3</b>	<b>18.9</b>
Overall	25.7	24.6	25.5	27.1	24.8	31.3	26.0	<b>32.9</b>	<b>28.7</b>

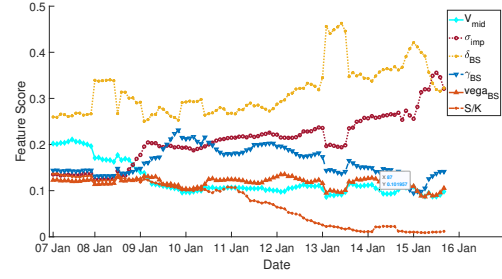
Table 5.5: S&P 500 call option hedging for 1-business day: bold entries indicating best Gain from GRU<sub>δ</sub>. The Gain ratio is a measure for the local hedging performance. The larger the gain ratio is, the better improvement the model achieves over the baseline BS delta hedging method in terms of local hedging risk. The gain ratio is reported on different delta buckets.

Delta	MV (%)	SABR <sub>MV</sub> (%)	LVF(%)	Bartlett		Data-Driven Model			
				Traded	All	DKL <sub>SPL</sub> (%)		GRU <sub>δ</sub> (%)	
						Traded	All	Traded	All
-0.9	15.1	11.2	-7.4	9.1	23.4	8.6	13.6	<b>15.1</b>	<b>17.2</b>
-0.8	18.7	19.6	6.8	3.2	21.9	6.5	16.7	<b>23.2</b>	<b>28.5</b>
-0.7	20.3	17.7	9.1	1.5	20.1	10.6	19.8	<b>28.5</b>	<b>32.8</b>
-0.6	20.4	16.7	9.2	6.1	19.2	14.9	21.0	<b>28.3</b>	<b>33.9</b>
-0.5	22.1	16.7	10.8	15.5	21.3	22.5	23.1	<b>29.2</b>	<b>34.5</b>
-0.4	23.8	17.7	12.0	21.0	24.4	24.2	25.2	<b>29.9</b>	<b>34.7</b>
-0.4	27.1	21.7	16.8	26.7	29.0	27.7	28.3	<b>30.6</b>	<b>33.6</b>
-0.2	29.6	25.8	20.6	29.3	31.6	30.1	30.8	25.4	29.9
-0.1	27.5	26.9	17.7	31.4	32.5	29.1	31.2	18.7	21.4
Overall	22.5	19.0	10.2	20.0	24.8	23.4	23.2	<b>26.2</b>	<b>29.7</b>

Table 5.6: S&P 500 put option hedging for 1-business day: bold entries indicating best Gain from GRU<sub>δ</sub>. The Gain ratio is a measure for the local hedging performance. The larger the gain ratio is, the better improvement the model achieves over the baseline BS delta hedging method in terms of local hedging risk. The gain ratio is reported on different delta buckets.



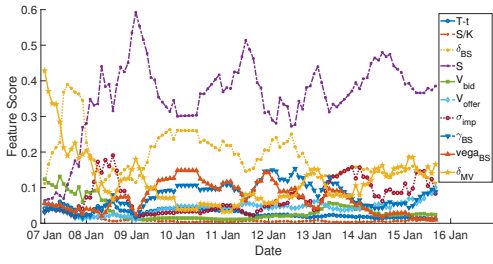
(a) Local Features Daily Hedging



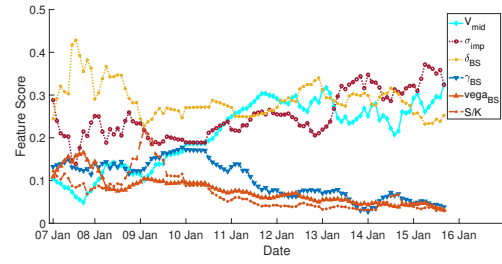
(b) Sequential Features Daily Hedging

Figure 5.3: Feature score for daily hedging model  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ : S&P500 call option (traded data)

From subplots (a) and (b) in Figure 5.4, it can be observed that the index price  $S$  is often ranked as the most important local feature for daily hedging put options. The past implied volatility sequence, the past BS delta sequence, and the past option price  $V_{mid}$  are often identified as the three important sequential features.



(a) Local Features Daily Hedging



(b) Sequential Features Daily Hedging

Figure 5.4: Feature score for daily hedging model  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ : S&P500 put option (traded data)

## 5.2 From Local Hedging Models to Total Hedging Models

A natural extension is to extend the sequential local hedging model to be a total hedging model where we rebalance multiple times until the expiries of the options. In the following chapter 6, we discuss the challenges associated with building such models and present our exploration on the data-driven total hedging model.

## Chapter 6

# Data-Driven Sequential Learning Framework for Total Hedging Risk

As we have discussed in section 2.1, in reality, one often want to hedge until the expiry of the option. Enhancing the local hedging model  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  to output the multiple hedging positions by minimizing a total hedging objective is quite attractive. From the model perspective, such enhancement is achievable. Indeed, recently a deep hedging model was proposed to minimize the total option hedging risk evaluated at the option expiry [25]. It is shown that using a RNN to represent the hedging position model can be a computationally efficient framework to determine the optimal hedging function when the market is incomplete, e.g., under the transaction cost [25].

Although minimizing the total hedging risk, which is hedging portfolio value at the expiry  $T$ , is more desirable. There are several major obstacles in obtaining enough market data to build a data-driven total hedging model. The deep hedging model [25] is built on synthetic data. It is hard to directly apply their methodology in real world due to the lack of market data needed to build a sufficient model.

In this chapter, we provide an achievable remedy to deal with issue of lack of market data. A enhanced sequential total hedging model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  is introduced to minimize a discrete total hedging objective. We then build the total hedging model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  based on the remedy we proposed and demonstrate the effectiveness of the remedy and the total hedging model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  using real market data experiments.

### 6.1 Data Augmentation for Market Option Data

Recall that the discrete total hedging risk (2.1.8) is defined as the the hedging portfolio value at expiry:

$$P_H(T, T, K) = \sum_{j=0}^{N_{rb}-1} \left\{ \left[ \frac{S_{t_{j+1}}}{D(t_{j+1}, T)} - \frac{S_{t_j}}{D(t_j, T)} \right] \delta_{t_j, T, K}^M \right\} + \frac{V_{t_0, T, K}^{mkt}}{D(t_0, T)} - V_{T, T, K}^{mkt}$$

where

$$D(t, T) = e^{-r(T-t)}$$

Suppose we have  $M$  hedging scenarios, a data driven model can be built by minimizing total hedging loss function such as MSE:

$$MSE_{total} = \frac{1}{M} \sum_{i=1}^M P_H(T_i, T_i, K_i)^2$$

Clearly, in order to build a efficient data-driven total hedging model, one needs to gather a sufficient number of sample  $M$ . In addition, ideally, one should also use non-overlapping underlying asset paths to generate training and testing hedging scenarios to avoid the correlation of different hedging scenarios. However, in reality, we have the following challenges:

1. Using non-overlapping underlying asset path to generate training and testing scenarios is not practical. For instance, assuming we are building a data-driven model for hedging 3 months until expiry, with non-overlapping underlying asset paths, 20 years of market data can provide only 80 different non-overlapping underlying asset paths which is clearly not enough to build a data-driven model.
2. Option data in real market is limited.
  - (a) Options listed in exchange in real market only have fixed expiry dates. For example, the expiration date for the standard S&P 500 index option is fixed at the third Friday of each month.<sup>1</sup> Therefore, if we only use market available expiration dates, the number of training scenarios will also be severely limited.
  - (b) In addition, the option with specific strike  $K$  and expiry  $T$  is not traded or quoted on every date. Even we use market available expiration dates, on the initial date  $t_0$  when we want to set up the hedging portfolio and the dates  $t_j$  where we rebalance the hedging portfolio, we may not have the market option data available for the option with a specific combination of strike  $K$  and expiry  $T$ .

In order to overcome the above challenges, we propose the following remedy.

1. Overlapping underlying asset path is allowed to be used.
2. Instead of using only market available expiration dates, we assume every business day can be the expiration dates of the options.
3. A no-arbitrage price surface is calibrated on each business day to obtain option price for a range of arbitrary combination of  $K$  and  $T$ :  $V_{t,T,K}^{Aug}$ .

---

<sup>1</sup> Starting from 2016, CBOE also introduces weekly S&P 500 index options which expired on Monday, Wednesday and Friday of each week. The data we gathered is up to 2015-08-31, so our experiments in this thesis does not include those data.

Therefore, we can greatly increase the number of training scenarios, since now the hedging scenarios can have arbitrary combinations of  $T$  and  $K$  even if the combinations of  $T$  and  $K$  are not directly observed in the market.

### 6.1.1 No-Arbitrage Price Surface

In this section, we describe how to calibrate an arbitrage-free price surface on each business day. We want to create a price surface that is **arbitrage-free**. In addition, we want to be able to **extrapolate** for in-the-money options and out-of-the-money options. Let  $Surf_t(T, K)$  be the option price surface function at time  $t$ . We want to make sure that the price surface satisfies the following no-arbitrage conditions:

1. No call spread arbitrage or put spread arbitrage:

$$-1 \leq \frac{\partial Surf_t(T, K)}{\partial K} \leq 0 \quad (\text{Call})$$

or

$$0 \leq \frac{\partial Surf_t(T, K)}{\partial K} \leq 1 \quad (\text{Put})$$

2. No butterfly spread arbitrage:

$$\frac{\partial^2 Surf_t(T, K)}{\partial K^2} \geq 0$$

3. No calendar spread arbitrage:

$$\frac{\partial Surf_t(T, K)}{\partial T} \geq 0$$

In the following subsection, we will discuss the steps of calibration of the arbitrage-free surface.

### SABR Interpolation and Extrapolation Between Strikes

In this thesis, we will use SABR model to obtain the option price for an arbitrary strike  $K$  unobserved in the market. On each business day  $t$ , we have observed option quotes for a set of market observed expiries. We denote the market available expiries as.

$$\mathbf{T}_t^{mkt} = \{T_0^t < T_1^t < \dots < T_{max}^t\}$$

The first expiry is set to be  $t$ :  $T_0^t = t$ . Note that for the first expiry  $T_0^t = t$ , the market option value at  $t$  is just the option payoff at  $t$  which is  $\max\{S_t - K, 0\}$  (call) or  $\max\{K - S_t, 0\}$  (put).

Since in this subsection, we are discussion how to obtain a arbitrage-free surface on a fixed date  $t$ , for the notational simplicity, we will omit the superscript and subscript  $t$  in this subsection



6.1.1, we denote the grid of market observed expires on  $t$  to be

$$\{T_0 < T_1 < \dots < T_{max}\}$$

We firstly use SABR model to obtain option price for a predetermined grid of strike  $0 = K_0 < K_1 < \dots < K_{max}$ . More specifically, for a fixed expiry  $T_i$ , let us define

$$K_{T_i}^{mkt} = \{K_1^{mkt}, \dots, K_{N_K}^{mkt}\}$$

to be the strikes for which market option price is available for  $T_i$ . We solve

$$\min_{\alpha, \nu, \rho} \sum_{j=1}^{N_K} \left( V_{SABR}(S, t, T_i, K_j^{mkt}, r, q; \alpha, \beta, \nu, \rho) - V^{mkt}(t, T_i, K_j^{mkt}) \right)^2$$

where  $V_{SABR}(S, t, T, K, r, q; \alpha, \beta, \nu, \rho)$  is option pricing function described in section 2.2.3. Since we are dealing with S&P500 index option, the log-normal assumption is more appropriate, we fix  $\beta = 1$  in the calibration process. Note that we have three parameters to be calibrated so we need to observe at least 3 data points from market to successfully build a SABR model. Therefore, the number of strikes  $N_K$  must be larger than 3. <sup>2</sup>

For each  $T_i$ , we calibrate a separate set of SABR parameters and we then use the calibrated SABR parameters to compute SABR price of the predetermined grid of strikes for each  $T_i$ . The SABR prices of the predetermined grid of strikes are used as the calibration targets for the volatility interpolation procedure described in the following subsection.

Although SABR model is computationally efficient and can match the market volatility smile well, it is not arbitrage-free.

The butterfly and the call or put spread arbitrage can exist although their occurrences are infrequent. In addition, for each expiry, a separate set SABR parameters are calibrated so calendar spread arbitrage can also exist. Therefore, before using the SABR price as the target for the LVF calibration, we need to check whether the arbitrage exists or not.

In this thesis, we use the sufficient conditions for no arbitrage [29] to check whether arbitrage exists for SABR prices computed based on the grid of strikes:  $0 = K_0 < K_1 < \dots < K_{max}$ , and the grid of expiries  $t = T_0 < T_1 < \dots < T_{max}$ . Let  $C_{SABR}(T, K)$  be the call option price of the expiry  $T$  and strike  $K$  returned by the SABR pricing function  $V_{SABR}(\cdot)$ . Taking the call option as the example, the criteria are set as the following:

1. No call spread arbitrage condition:

$$0 \leq \frac{C_{SABR}(T_j, K_{i-1}) - C_{SABR}(T_j, K_i)}{K_i - K_{i-1}} \leq 1$$

---

<sup>2</sup>The  $V^{mkt}(t, T_i, K_j^{mkt})$  is the mid-price of market observed best bid and best ask prices. We use market quotes in calibration and even if the trading volume is zero, we will still include them in the calibration.

2. No butterfly spread arbitrage condition:

$$C_{SABR}(T_j, K_{i-1}) - C_{SABR}(T_j, K_i) \geq \frac{K_i - K_{i-1}}{K_{i+1} - K_i} (C_{SABR}(T_j, K_i) - C_{SABR}(T_j, K_{i+1}))$$

3. No calendar spread arbitrage:

$$C_{SABR}(T_j, K_i) \geq C_{SABR}(T_{j-1}, K_i)$$

If we found that the prices returned by the SABR model has failed any of the above arbitrage conditions, we will manually adjust the option prices from SABR model until we can pass these conditions. Please, note that this manual process is rarely needed in practice.

### Volatility Interpolation Between Expiries

Andreasen and Høge [5] have introduced an efficient and arbitrage-free volatility interpolation method based on a one step finite difference implicit Euler scheme applied to a local volatility parametrization. In this thesis, we use the volatility interpolation approach to compute option price for arbitrary expiry  $T$  unobserved in market.

The volatility interpolation method is based on the Dupire's equation [60]. The Dupire's equation enables us to deduce the volatility function in a local volatility model from quoted put and call options in the market. Under a risk-neutral measure, we assume:

$$\frac{dS_t}{S_t} = (r - q)dt + \sigma(t, S_t)dZ_t$$

where  $r$  is the risk-free interest rate and  $q$  is the dividend yield. Let  $C(T, K)$  be the call option pricing function, Dupire's equation states:

$$\frac{\partial C(T, K)}{\partial T} = \frac{1}{2}\sigma^2(T, K)K^2\frac{\partial^2 C(T, K)}{\partial K^2} - (r - q)K\frac{\partial C(T, K)}{\partial K} - qC(T, K)$$

Define the normalized call price in terms of discount factor  $D(t, T)$  and forward price  $F(t, T)$  and the normalized strike  $\hat{K}$  as:

$$\begin{aligned} D(t, T) &= e^{-r(T-t)} \\ F(t, T) &= S_t e^{(r-q)(T-t)} \\ \hat{K} &= \frac{K}{F(t, T)} \\ \hat{C}(T, \hat{K}) &= \frac{C(T, \hat{K}F(t, T))}{D(t, T)F(t, T)} = \frac{C(T, K)}{D(t, T)F(t, T)} \end{aligned}$$

Dupire's equation can be simplified as [5]:

$$\frac{\partial \widehat{C}(T, \widehat{K})}{\partial T} = \frac{1}{2} \widehat{\sigma}^2(T, \widehat{K}) \widehat{K}^2 \frac{\partial^2 \widehat{C}(T, \widehat{K})}{\partial \widehat{K}^2}, \quad \widehat{\sigma}(T, \widehat{K}) = \sigma(T, K)$$

Therefore, we can recursively solve the finite difference discretization of the Dupire's forward equation using the fully implicit method:

$$\frac{\partial \widehat{C}(T, \widehat{K})}{\partial T} = \frac{1}{2} \widehat{\sigma}^2(T, \widehat{K}) \widehat{K}^2 \frac{\partial^2 \widehat{C}(T, \widehat{K})}{\partial \widehat{K}^2}$$

with the initial condition  $\widehat{C}(T_0, \widehat{K}) = \max(1 - \widehat{K}, 0)$ , lower boundary condition  $\widehat{C}(T, 0) = 1$ , upper boundary condition  $\widehat{C}(T, \widehat{K}_{max}) = 0$ . Given a grid of expiries  $t = T_0 < T_1 < \dots < T_{max}$  and a grid of normalized strike:  $0 = \widehat{K}_0 < \widehat{K}_1 < \dots < \widehat{K}_{max}$ , we assume  $\widehat{\sigma}(T, \widehat{K})$  to be a piecewise constant functions for a given  $T_i$ .

$$\widehat{\sigma}(T_i, \widehat{K}) = \begin{cases} \sigma_{T_i, \widehat{K}_0}, & \text{if } \widehat{K} \leq \widehat{K}_0 \\ \vdots & \vdots \\ \sigma_{T_i, \widehat{K}_j}, & \text{if } \widehat{K}_{j-1} < \widehat{K} \leq \widehat{K}_j \\ \vdots & \vdots \\ \sigma_{T_i, \widehat{K}_{max}}, & \text{if } \widehat{K} > \widehat{K}_{max} \end{cases}$$

We further assume:

$$\frac{\partial^2 \widehat{C}(T, \widehat{K}_0)}{\partial \widehat{K}^2} = \frac{\partial^2 \widehat{C}(T, \widehat{K}_{max})}{\partial \widehat{K}^2} = 0$$

The fully implicit finite difference method in matrix form is:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \widehat{C}(T_i, \widehat{K}_0) \\ \widehat{C}(T_i, \widehat{K}_1) \\ \widehat{C}(T_i, \widehat{K}_2) \\ \vdots \\ \widehat{C}(T_i, \widehat{K}_{max}) \end{bmatrix} = \mathbb{M} \begin{bmatrix} \widehat{C}(T_{i+1}, \widehat{K}_0) \\ \widehat{C}(T_{i+1}, \widehat{K}_1) \\ \widehat{C}(T_{i+1}, \widehat{K}_2) \\ \vdots \\ \widehat{C}(T_{i+1}, \widehat{K}_{max}) \end{bmatrix}$$

where  $\mathbb{M}$  is a tri-diagonal matrix parametrized by  $\sigma(T_i, \cdot)$

$$\mathbb{M}^{-1} \begin{bmatrix} \widehat{C}(T_i, \widehat{K}_0) \\ \widehat{C}(T_i, \widehat{K}_1) \\ \widehat{C}(T_i, \widehat{K}_2) \\ \vdots \\ \widehat{C}(T_i, \widehat{K}_{max}) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \widehat{C}(T_{i+1}, \widehat{K}_0) \\ \widehat{C}(T_{i+1}, \widehat{K}_1) \\ \widehat{C}(T_{i+1}, \widehat{K}_2) \\ \vdots \\ \widehat{C}(T_{i+1}, \widehat{K}_{max}) \end{bmatrix}$$

We try to find  $\mathbb{M}$  that so that  $\widehat{C}(T_{i+1}, \widehat{K}_j) = \widehat{C}_{SABR}(T_{i+1}, \widehat{K}_j)$ . Where

$$\widehat{C}_{SABR}(T_{i+1}, \widehat{K}_j) = \frac{C_{SABR}(T_{i+1}, K_j)}{D(t, T_{i+1})F(t, T_{i+1})}$$

$$K_j = \widehat{K}_j F(t, T_{i+1})$$

and  $C_{SABR}(T_{i+1}, K_j)$  is the price returned by the SABR pricing model for the grid point  $(T_{i+1}, K_j)$ .

Given  $\widehat{C}(T_i, \widehat{K}_j)$ , this can be done by:

$$\inf_{\sigma(T_i, \cdot)} \sum_j \left( \frac{\widehat{C}(T_{i+1}, \widehat{K}_j) - \widehat{C}_{SABR}(T_{i+1}, k_j)}{Vega_B(T_{i+1}, \widehat{K}_j)} \right)^2 \quad (6.1.1)$$

Note that  $\widehat{C}(T_0, \widehat{K}) = \max(1 - \widehat{K}, 0)$  is given, we can therefore recursively solve the optimization problem for  $T_1, \dots, T_{max}$ . The  $Vega_B$  is the Black vega based on the implied volatility returned from the calibrated SABR model.

After optimization, the local volatility functions are translated into arbitrage-free prices for a discrete set of expiries but it does not directly specify the option prices between the expiries. For  $T \in [T_i, T_{i+1})$ , we can fill in the gaps by:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \widehat{C}(T, \widehat{K}_0) \\ \widehat{C}(T, \widehat{K}_1) \\ \widehat{C}(T, \widehat{K}_2) \\ \vdots \\ \widehat{C}(T, \widehat{K}_{max}) \end{bmatrix} = \mathbb{M}^{-1} \begin{bmatrix} \widehat{C}(T_i, \widehat{K}_0) \\ \widehat{C}(T_i, \widehat{K}_1) \\ \widehat{C}(T_i, \widehat{K}_2) \\ \vdots \\ \widehat{C}(T_i, \widehat{K}_{max}) \end{bmatrix}$$

where  $\mathbb{M}$  is a tri-diagonal matrix parametrized by  $\sigma(T_i, \cdot)$ . Note that  $\mathbb{M}$  is known after the calibration (6.1.1). We then recover the call price by:

$$C(T, K) = \widehat{C}(T, \widehat{K}) D(t, T) F(t, T)$$

Interpolation based on the above procedure can guarantee the option prices computed is arbitrage-free. Detailed proof can be found in [5]. To sum up, with the help of SABR model and the volatility interpolation procedure, we can compute the arbitrage-free option price for any arbitrary  $T$  for the predetermined grid of strikes  $0 = K_0 < K_1 < \dots < K_{max}$ .

In the above discussion, we use the call option as the example but the analysis also holds for put options. More specifically, let  $P(T, K)$  be the function of put option price, the Dupire's equation for put option is:

$$\frac{\partial \widehat{P}(T, \widehat{K})}{\partial T} = \frac{1}{2} \widehat{\sigma}^2(T, \widehat{K}) \widehat{K}^2 \frac{\partial^2 \widehat{P}(T, \widehat{K})}{\partial \widehat{K}^2}, \quad \widehat{\sigma}(T, \widehat{K}) = \sigma(T, K).$$

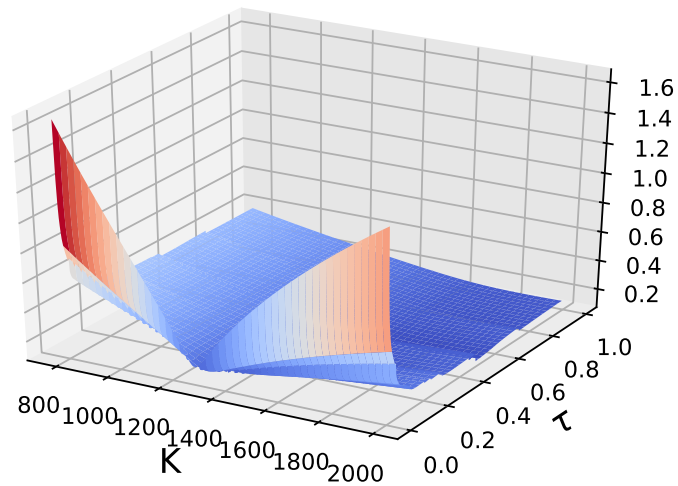
Therefore, one can use the above volatility interpolation procedure to obtain put option prices for unobserved expiries as well.

## 6.1.2 Data Augmentation for Training Scenarios

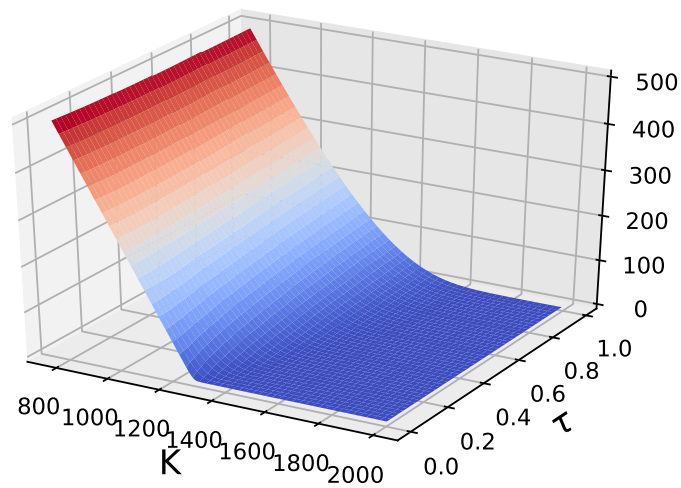
Following the calibration process in section 6.1.1, on each trading date  $t$ , we can obtain a pricing surface  $Surf_t(T, K)$ . The  $T$  can be any business day that is larger than the current trading date  $t$  and smaller than the maximum expiry  $T_{max}$  observed in market on date  $t$ . The  $K$  can be any strike that belongs to the given grid of strikes  $0 = K_0 < K_1 < \dots < K_{max}$ . As an example, in Figure 6.1, we show the resulting price surface and implied volatility surface for SP500 index call options on 2012-01-04. In Figure 6.1, we use  $\tau = T - t$  to denote the time to maturity.

Based on the calibration process we mentioned above, we describe the procedure of gathering the training scenarios for hedging  $N_H$  business days as the following:

1. We pick a arbitrary train expiry date  $T_{train}$ . Note that  $T_{train}$  does not have to be a real expiry that exists in market.  $T_{train}$  can be any business day.
2. We then obtain a starting date  $t_0$  to set up the hedging portfolio which is a  $N_H$ -business days away from  $T_{train}$ . That is to say  $T_{train} - t_0 = N_H/250$  where we assume there are 250 business days in one year.
3. We check all the market observed strikes for all the business dates between  $t_0$  and  $T_{train}$ . Let  $K_{max}^{mkt}$  be the maximum of strikes we observed in markets between  $t_0$  and  $T_{train}$ .
4. The grid of augmented strikes are defined as:  $\mathbf{K}_{grid, T_{train}}^{Aug} = \{0 = K_0 < K_1 < \dots < K_{max}\}$  where  $K_i - K_{i-1} = \Delta K, i \geq 1$  and  $K_{max} = 2 \times K_{max}^{mkt}$ . Please note that the grid of strikes is the same for all business day  $t$  between  $t_0$  and  $T_{train}$  when we calibrate the surface. In this chapter, we set  $\Delta K = 5$  for experiments on S&P 500 index options which is consistent with the S&P500 index option strike specification in real market [103].
5. On each business day  $t \in [t_0, T_{train})$ , we can observed a set of market observed expiries:  $\mathbf{T}_t^{mkt} = \{T_0^t, T_1^t, \dots, T_{max}^t\}$ .
6. We calibrate the SABR models for each market observed expiries  $T_i^t \in \mathbf{T}_t^{mkt}, t \in [t_0, T)$ . The calibrated SABR models return the prices for the grid  $0 = K_0 < K_1 < \dots < K_{max}$  and we fix the potential arbitrages for SABR prices returned by the SABR models, if there is any. After this process, we will have  $V_{t, T, K}^{SABR}$  where  $t \in [t_0, T_{train}), T \in \mathbf{T}_t^{mkt}, K \in \mathbf{K}_{grid, T_{train}}^{Aug}$ .
7. If  $T_{train} \in \mathbf{T}_t^{mkt}$  and  $V_{t, T_{train}, K}^{mkt}$  is directly observable from market. We will just use the market data to construct the time series needed for the hedging model.
8. If  $T_{train} \in \mathbf{T}_t^{mkt}$  but the  $V_{t, T_{train}, K}^{mkt}$  is not directly observable from market due to the fact that there is no market quote for strike  $K$ , we will use SABR model to fill the gaps. In this case, we assume  $V_{t, T_{train}, K}^{mkt} = V_{t, T_{train}, K}^{SABR}$ .



(a) Implied Volatility Surface



(b) Price Surface

Figure 6.1: The price surface and implied volatility surface calibrated for SP500 index Call Options on 2012-01-04.

9. If  $T_{train} \notin \mathbf{T}_t^{mkt}$  or we do not have enough data to calibrate a SABR model for  $T_{train} \in \mathbf{T}_t^{mkt}$ , we can use the volatility interpolation process based on LVF [5] to obtain option prices on each day  $t$  for the expiry  $T_{train}$  we picked on step 1:  $V_{t,T_{train},K}^{LVF}$  where  $t \in [t_0, T_{train})$ ,  $K \in \mathbf{K}_{grid,T_{train}}^{Aug}$ . In this case, we assume  $V_{t,T_{train},K}^{mkt} = V_{t,T_{train},K}^{LVF}$ . Furthermore, we can also obtain other option related information such as Black-Scholes delta, gamma, vega and so on.

### 6.1.3 Data Augmentation for Testing Scenarios

For testing, we only test on market observed expiries and strikes. More specifically, the procedure of gathering the testing scenarios for hedging  $N_H$  business days is as the following:

1. We pick a test expiry date  $T_{test}$ . Note that  $T_{test}$  must be a real expiry that exists in market.
2. We then obtain a starting date to set up the hedge portfolio  $t_0$  which is a  $N_H$ -business days away from  $T_{test}$ . That is to say  $T_{test} - t_0 = N_H/250$  where we assume there are 250 business days in one year.
3. On the starting date  $t_0$ , we can obtain all market option quotes for the expiry  $T_{test}$  and we have a grid of market strikes for expiry  $T_{test}$  on  $t_0$ :  $\mathbf{K}_{t_0,T_{test}}^{mkt} = \{K_1^{mkt} < \dots < K_{N_K}^{mkt}\}$ . The grid for testing is set to be  $\mathbf{K}_{grid}^{test} = \{K_0 = 0 < K_1 < \dots < K_{max}\}$  where  $K_i - K_{i-1} = \Delta K, i \geq 1$  and  $K_{max} = 2 \times K_{N_K}^{mkt}$ . Please note that  $\mathbf{K}_{t_0,T_{test}}^{mkt} \subset \mathbf{K}_{grid}^{test}$ .
4. On each business day  $t \in [t_0, T_{test})$ , we can observed a set of market observed expiries:  $\mathbf{T}_t^{mkt} = \{T_0^t, T_1^t, \dots, T_{max}^t\}$ .
5. We calibrate the SABR models for each market observed expires  $T_i^t \in \mathbf{T}_t^{mkt}$ ,  $t \in [t_0, T)$ ,  $T \in \mathbf{T}_t^{mkt}$ . The calibrated SABR models return the prices for the grid of strikes and we fix the potential arbitrages for SABR prices returned by the SABR models, if there is any.
6. If  $T_{test} \in \mathbf{T}_t^{mkt}$ ,  $K \in \mathbf{K}_{t_0,T_{test}}^{mkt}$ , and  $V_{t,T_{test},K}^{mkt}$  is directly observable from market. We will just use the market data to construct the time series needed for the hedging model.
7. If  $T_{test} \in \mathbf{T}_t^{mkt}$ ,  $K \in \mathbf{K}_{t_0,T_{test}}^{mkt}$  but the  $V_{t,T_{test},K}^{mkt}$  is not directly observable from market, we will use SABR model to fill the gaps. In this case, we assume  $V_{t,T_{test},K}^{mkt} = V_{t,T_{test},K}^{SABR}$ .
8. If we do not have enough data to calibrate a SABR model for  $T_{test} \in \mathbf{T}_t^{mkt}$ , we can use the volatility interpolation process [5] to obtain option prices on each day  $t$  for the expiry  $T_{train}$  we picked on step 1:  $V_{t,T_{test},K}^{LVF}$  where  $t \in [t_0, T_{test})$ ,  $K \in \mathbf{K}_{t_0,T_{test}}^{mkt}$ . In this case, we assume  $V_{t,T_{test},K}^{mkt} = V_{t,T_{test},K}^{LVF}$ . Furthermore, we can also obtain other option related information such as Black-Scholes delta, gamma, vega and so on.

Even if  $T_{test}$  is a real expiry in market, the step 5 to 7 are frequently needed since that the options with a specific strike and expiry combination are usually not traded every day so SABR model

will be needed to fill in the gaps. For a market observable expiry with  $T - t < 1$ , on each date, we usually will have enough data to calibrate a SABR model. In this thesis, we are hedging for less than 1 year, so step 8 is rarely needed. For the test scenarios, we only care about real expiries  $T_{test} \in \mathbf{T}_t^{mkt}$  and real strikes  $K \in \mathbf{K}_{t_0, T_{test}}^{mkt}$  in market.

#### 6.1.4 Alternative Methods for Calibrating Arbitrage-Free Surface

There are many other alternative methods to calibrate the arbitrage-free surface. One of the most successful volatility surface models is the Stochastic Inspired Volatility model (SVI) [74] used internally at Merrill Lynch and publicly disclosed by Jim Gatheral in 2004. SVI is a simple five-parameters formula. Therefore, no necessary and sufficient conditions are known ensuring the absence of arbitrage. Numerous applied research teams have attempted to extend SVI to a whole surface model. This has been achieved in 2012 by Gatheral and Jacquier with the Surface SVI (SSVI) [76]. SSVI is parameterized in a way that a SSVI slice at a given maturity  $T$  is a SVI slice with only 3 parameters. This restriction allows to get explicit sufficient conditions for absence of arbitrage, while allowing enough flexibility for calibration. The SSVI model is recently extended by [92] and [47]. If the input market data used for calibration contains arbitrage, the calibrated surface from SSVI [76] or its extension [92, 47] can typically be viewed as the surface that is as close as possible to the original market data, while staying arbitrage-free. Lastly, the SSVI calibration is conducted similarly as the arbitrage-free surface calibration process mentioned in this thesis. One will fit SVI to options with a discrete set of expiries which is observed from market directly. Then, one may interpolate between two expiries using the certain volatility interpolation algorithms that guaranteeing no static arbitrages.

In this thesis, the major goal is not to compare the arbitrage-free surface calibration methods. Therefore, we leave the exploration of the alternative methods to calibrate the arbitrage-free surface as the future work of our study.

## 6.2 Total Hedging Model

In this section, we describe the total hedging model. Figure 6.2 depicts the proposed total discrete GRU hedging model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$ , which is derived from the local hedging model  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  we proposed in chapter 4. This model uses the sequential features, which encode information in between two consecutive re-balancing time steps, and the hedging position from the previous re-balancing time as the input. The output hedging position is used as the input for the next re-balancing time.

Following the discrete total risk definition in section 2.1.2, consider a hedging portfolio  $P_{t,T,K}^H$  which is composed of:

- A short position on option  $V^{mkt}(t, T, K)$



- Long  $\delta_{t,T,K}^M$  (or short if  $\delta_{t,T,K}^M < 0$ ) shares of  $S(t)$
- An amount in a risk-free bank account  $B(t)$

For the notational simplicity, we denote:

$$V_{t,T,K}^{mkt} = V^{mkt}(t, T, K), S_t = S(t), B_t = B(t), P_{t,T,K}^H = P_{t,T,K}^H$$

Also, if  $V_{t,T,K}^{mkt}$  is not directly observable from market, it is set to be the augmented option prices either from SABR model or LVF model as discussed in section 6.1. Initially at  $t_0$ , we have

$$P_{t_0,T,K}^H = -V_{t_0,T,K}^{mkt} + \delta_{t_0,T,K}^M S_{t_0} + B_{t_0} = 0$$

and

$$B_{t_0} = V_{t_0,T,K}^{mkt} - \delta_{t_0,T,K}^M S_{t_0}$$

Let us assume we rebalance  $N_{rb}$  times until the expiry and the gap between each rebalancing time is fixed to be  $\Delta t$ :

$$t_j = t_0 + j\Delta t; j = 0, \dots, N_{rb} - 1; t_0 = T - N_{rb}\Delta t$$

At each rebalancing time  $t_j$ , we update our hedging position by changing the share we hold from  $\delta_{t_j-\Delta t,T,K}^M$  to  $\delta_{t_j,T,K}^M$  at  $t_j$ , where any required cash is borrowed, and any excess cash is loaned. As discussed in section 2.1.2, the final hedging portfolio value at  $T$  is:

$$P_H(T, T, K) = \sum_{j=0}^{N_{rb}-1} \left\{ \left[ \frac{S_{t_{j+1}}}{D(t_{j+1}, T)} - \frac{S_{t_j}}{D(t_j, T)} \right] \delta_{t_j,T,K}^M \right\} + \frac{V_{t_0,T,K}^{mkt}}{D(t_0, T)} - V_{T,T,K}^{mkt} \quad (6.2.1)$$

where

$$D(t, T) = e^{-r(T-t)}$$

Now, consider at a arbitrary rebalancing time  $t \in \{t_0, t_1, \dots, t_{N_{rb}-1}\}$ , strike  $K$ , and expiry  $T$ . Assume we have computed the hedging position at previous rebalancing time  $t - \Delta$ :  $\delta_{t-\Delta,T,K}^M$ .

Let  $\Delta t_d$  denote the time interval for sequential information recording. In the subsequent empirical study, the interval  $\Delta t_d$  equals one-day. We denote the sequential features recording the daily history for hedging the option with expiry  $T$  and strike  $K$  as

$$\mathbf{Y}_t^{T,K} = [\mathbf{y}_{t-N\Delta t_d}^{T,K}, \dots, \mathbf{y}_t^{T,K}]$$

For notational simplicity, we denote  $\tau_i = t - (N + 1 - i)\Delta t_d$  with  $i = 1, \dots, N + 1$ , we thus have:

$$\mathbf{Y}_t^{T,K} = [\mathbf{y}_{\tau_1}^{T,K}, \dots, \mathbf{y}_{\tau_{N+1}}^{T,K}]$$

The vector  $\mathbf{y}_{\tau_i}^{T,K} \in \mathbb{R}^{d_s}$  has  $d_s$  features at time  $\tau_i$  in the input sequential feature.  $d_s$  is the dimension for the sequential feature  $\mathbf{Y}_t^{T,K}$ , and  $N + 1$  is the length of the sequential feature sequence. We set  $N = \frac{\Delta t}{\Delta t_d}$ , so  $\mathbf{Y}_t^{T,K}$  contains the sequential information in between two consecutive rebalancing time  $t$  and  $t - \Delta t$ . The encoder transforms information from the sequential feature  $\mathbf{Y}_t^{T,K}$  to a fixed-sized vector  $\hat{\mathbf{h}}_E$  and the decoder makes the final prediction based on both  $\hat{\mathbf{h}}_E$  and the previous hedging position  $\delta_{t-\Delta t, T, K}^M$ . The overall structure of the proposed model is illustrated in Figure 6.2.

### 6.2.1 The Difference Between $\text{GRU}_\delta$ And $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$

By comparing the  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  as in Figure 4.1 and the  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  as in Figure 6.2, one can notice that the model structure between  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  and  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  is similar to each other. Below we firstly list the differences between  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  and  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ :

- The most significant difference between the  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  and the  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  is that  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  is built on minimizing discrete local risk as in section 2.1.1 while  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  is built based on minimizing the discrete total risk as in in section 2.1.2. The details of training objective and training procedure for  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  are in later section 6.2.2 and 6.2.3.
- In  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ , we have a local features vector  $\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K} \in \mathbb{R}^{d_l}$  which records local information at the hedging time  $t$  for hedging the option with expiry  $T$  and strike  $K$ .
- In  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$ , we no longer retain the local features vector  $\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K} \in \mathbb{R}^{d_l}$  as the input to the model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$ . We only retain the sequential feature  $\mathbf{Y}_t^{T,K}$  which contains all the sequential information between two consecutive rebalancing time  $t$  and  $t - \Delta t$ . This modification is inspired by the previous total risk minimization exploration [44, 150]. In [44, 150], the authors demonstrated the importance of using the entire path of stock instead of the current stock in determining the hedging position. Furthermore, we feel that the inclusion of  $\mathbf{x}_t^{T,K} \in \mathbb{R}^{d_l}$  is a redundant design since the sequential feature  $\mathbf{Y}_t^{T,K}$  contains the local information at the hedging time  $t$  for hedging the option with expiry  $T$  and strike  $K$ .
- Since the analytical formula for the variance-optimal total risk hedging [150] and spline total risk minimization formulation [44] both demonstrate the dependence of the current hedging position on the past hedging position, we include previous hedging position  $\delta_{t-\Delta t, T, K}^M$  as the input to compute the current hedging position  $\delta_{t, T, K}^M$ .

Below we briefly illustrate the model structure of  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$

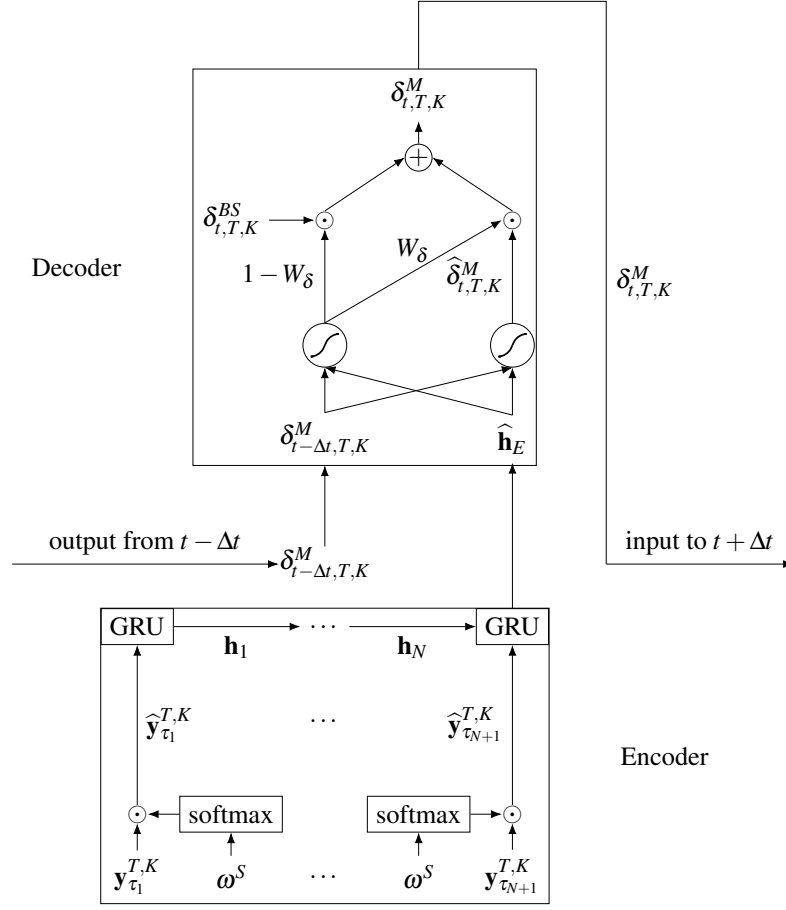


Figure 6.2: GRU<sub>TOTAL</sub>: GRU encode-decoder total hedging model. The encoder summarizes the time series  $\mathbf{Y}_t^{T,K} = [\mathbf{y}_{\tau_1}^{T,K}, \dots, \mathbf{y}_{\tau_{N+1}}^{T,K}]$  as a succinct vector  $\hat{\mathbf{h}}_E$ . The decoder outputs the hedging position based on the vector  $\hat{\mathbf{h}}_E$  and the previous hedging position  $\delta_{t-\Delta t, T, K}^M$  observed at the hedging time  $t$ . More specifically, in the decoder, a candidate output  $\hat{\delta}_{t, T, K}^M$  is firstly produced. The final output  $\delta_{t, T, K}^M$  is computed based on the linear combination of BS delta  $\delta_{t, T, K}^{BS}$  and the candidate output  $\hat{\delta}_{t, T, K}^M$ . The combination weight is determined by  $W_\delta$ . The feature weight  $\omega^L$  is used to compute weighted sequential feature  $\hat{\mathbf{y}}_{\tau}^{T,K}$ . The weighting acts as a feature selection process. Each edge in the graph has an arrow on it, pointing from a node whose output is used by the node pointed by the arrow as an input. The output  $\delta_{t, T, K}^M$  at  $t$  is used as the input for next step  $t + \Delta t$ .

## Feature Selection via Embedded Feature Weighting

Similarly as in  $\text{GRU}_\delta$ , for the sequential feature  $\mathbf{y}_{\tau_i}^{T,K}$ , the  $j^{\text{th}}$  component of the normalized weight vector is given by

$$\frac{\exp(\omega_j^S)}{\sum_{i=1}^{d_s} \exp(\omega_i^S)}$$

The weighted feature vector at time  $\tau_i$  is defined as

$$\hat{\mathbf{y}}_{\tau_i}^{T,K} = \frac{\exp(\omega^S)}{\sum_{j=1}^{d_s} \exp(\omega_j^S)} \odot \mathbf{y}_{\tau_i}^{T,K}$$

## GRU Encoder

At the step  $i$ , the encoder computes the value of the hidden state  $\mathbf{h}_i$  using a GRU cell. The input at the step  $i$  of the encoder is  $\hat{\mathbf{y}}_{\tau_i}^{T,K}$ ,  $i = 1, \dots, N+1$ . The internal structure of the GRU cell is shown in Figure 4.2.

Let  $\mathbf{W}_z, \mathbf{U}_z, \mathbf{b}_z, \mathbf{W}_r, \mathbf{U}_r, \mathbf{b}_r, \mathbf{W}_h, \mathbf{U}_h, \mathbf{b}_h$  denote parameters shared by all GRU cells. We compute the  $\mathbf{h}_i$  as:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{z}_i &= \text{sigmoid}(\mathbf{W}_z \hat{\mathbf{y}}_{\tau_i}^{T,K} + \mathbf{U}_z \mathbf{h}_{i-1} + \mathbf{b}_z) \\ \mathbf{r}_i &= \text{sigmoid}(\mathbf{W}_r \hat{\mathbf{y}}_{\tau_i}^{T,K} + \mathbf{U}_r \mathbf{h}_{i-1} + \mathbf{b}_r) \\ \hat{\mathbf{h}}_i &= \tanh(\mathbf{W}_h \hat{\mathbf{y}}_{\tau_i}^{T,K} + \mathbf{U}_h (\mathbf{r}_i \odot \mathbf{h}_{i-1}) + \mathbf{b}_h) \\ \mathbf{h}_i &= (1 - \mathbf{z}_i) \odot \mathbf{h}_{i-1} + \mathbf{z}_i \odot \hat{\mathbf{h}}_i \end{aligned}$$

The hidden state at the last step  $\mathbf{h}_{N+1}$ , corresponding to time  $\tau_{N+1} = t$ , is supplied to the decoder as the fixed size vector  $\hat{\mathbf{h}}_E$ , which extracts relevant information in  $\mathbf{Y}_t^{T,K}$ .

## Decoder for $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$

The decoder of  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  computes the candidate output  $\hat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M$  in the following way:

$$\hat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M = \text{sigmoid}(\mathbf{v}_{out}^T \tanh(\mathbf{U}_{out} \hat{\mathbf{h}}_E + \mathbf{W}_{out} \delta_{t-\Delta t, T, K}^M + \mathbf{b}_{out})).$$

The the output gate value  $W_\delta$  is given by:

$$W_\delta = \text{sigmoid}(\mathbf{v}_{Gate}^T \tanh(\mathbf{U}_{Gate} \hat{\mathbf{h}}_E + \mathbf{W}_{Gate} \delta_{t-\Delta t, T, K}^M + \mathbf{b}_{Gate})).$$

For hedging a call option, the final output from  $\text{GRU}_\delta$  is :

$$\delta_{t,T,K}^M = \hat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M \times W_\delta + \delta_{t,T,K}^{BS} \times (1 - W_\delta)$$

For hedging a put option, the final output from the model is:

$$\delta_{t,T,K}^M = -\widehat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M \times W_\delta + \delta_{t,T,K}^{BS} \times (1 - W_\delta)$$

where  $\widehat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M$  is the candidate output.

## 6.2.2 Training Objective For GRU<sub>TOTAL</sub>

Assume we have gathered hedging scenarios for a set of the unique combinations expiries  $T$  and strike  $K$ . The model GRU<sub>TOTAL</sub> can be built by minimizing total hedging loss function such as MSE:

$$MSE_{total} = \sum_{(t_0,T,K)} P_H(T,T,K)^2$$

where  $P_H(T,T,K)$  is defined as in equation (6.2.1). A more appropriate criteria is the relative hedging error instead of the absolute total hedging error since we are mixing scenarios of different strikes together (i.e., the scenarios include near-money, in-the-money, and out-of-the money options. The absolute hedging error for in-the-money options tend to be much bigger than near-the-money options and out-of-the-money options). Additionally, MSE is vulnerable to the existence of outliers. Furthermore, Coleman et al. [44] demonstrated that the linear loss function can produce better hedging performance. Therefore, in training the GRU<sub>TOTAL</sub>, we use the following objective:

$$Obj_{total} = \sum_{(t_0,T,K)} \left| \frac{D(t_0,T)P_H(T,T,K)}{V_{t_0,T,K}^{mkt}} \right| \quad (6.2.2)$$

Since we notice that GRU <sub>$\delta$</sub>  is built on top of pure market data while GRU<sub>TOTAL</sub> is built on top of augmented market data, we will not compare the performance of GRU <sub>$\delta$</sub>  and GRU<sub>TOTAL</sub> directly. Besides, we are curious about the effect of the choice of objective functions. Therefore, we define a new comparing model GRU<sub>LOCAL</sub>. The model structure of GRU<sub>LOCAL</sub> is exactly the same as GRU<sub>TOTAL</sub> which is as in Figure 6.2. The major difference is GRU<sub>TOTAL</sub> is built on minimizing objective (6.2.2). While the GRU<sub>LOCAL</sub> is built on minimizing a local risk objective.

More specifically, for a unique combination of  $T$  and  $K$ , at a rebalancing time  $t_j$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta V_{t_j,K,T}^{mkt} &= D(t_0, t_{j+1})V_{t_{j+1},K,T}^{mkt} - D(t_0, t_j)V_{t_j,K,T}^{mkt} \\ \Delta S_{t_j} &= D(t_0, t_{j+1})S_{t_{j+1}} - D(t_0, t_j)S_{t_j} \\ D(t, T) &= e^{-r(T-t)} \end{aligned}$$

$$t_j = t_0 + j\Delta t; j = 0, \dots, N_{rb} - 1; t_0 = T - N_{rb}\Delta t$$

If the option price  $V_{t,K,T}^{mkt}$  is not directly observable from market, we will use the augmented prices

as the replacement. The objective for the  $\text{GRU}_{\text{LOCAL}}$  is therefore:

$$Obj_{Local} = \sum_{(t_j, T, K)} |\Delta V_{t_j, T, K}^{mkt} - \Delta S_{t_j} \delta_{t_j, T, K}^M| \quad (6.2.3)$$

### 6.2.3 Training Procedure For $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$ and $\text{GRU}_{\text{LOCAL}}$

The training procedures for  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  and  $\text{GRU}_{\text{LOCAL}}$  are similar to the training procedure for  $\text{GRU}_{\delta}$ . More specifically, we initialize the parameters using the same procedure as in section 4.2.1 and we pretrain the  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  and  $\text{GRU}_{\text{LOCAL}}$  similarly as in section 4.2.3. Early stopping is used as the regularization techniques. We reserve the validation set to determine when to stop the training. Again the validation set is a set of the unique combinations of expiries  $T$  and strike  $K$ . We train  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  and  $\text{GRU}_{\text{LOCAL}}$  until trust region algorithms stops and select the best performing parameters based on the the total risk objective (6.2.2) or local risk objective (6.2.3).

#### Model Building Procedure

For the experiments in the following section, We are hedging for a relatively long period (100 business days) until the expiry. Therefore, both  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  and  $\text{GRU}_{\text{LOCAL}}$  need to be updated as the market can drastically change during the hedging period. Therefore, we use the following model building procedure:

1. We pick a test expiry date  $T_{test}$  and get the testing set which is<sup>3</sup>:

$$TestSet = \{(T, K) | T = T_{test}, K \in \mathbf{K}_{t_0, T_{test}}^{mkt}\}$$

where  $\mathbf{K}_{t_0, T_{test}}^{mkt}$  is the grid of strikes for expiry  $T_{test}$  that can be observed directly from market on the initial date  $t_0$  which is 100 business away from  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$ .

2. On the initial date  $t_0$ , we prepare the training set and validation set to be

$$TrainSet = \{(T, K) | T_{min} \leq T < t_0, K \in \mathbf{K}_{grid, T}^{Aug}\}$$

$$ValSet = \{(T, K) | T = t_0, K \in \mathbf{K}_{grid, T}^{Aug}\}$$

where  $\mathbf{K}_{grid, T}^{Aug}$  is the augmented grid of strikes for the expiry  $T$  similarly defined as in 6.1.2 step 4. Note that for training and validation set, we do not require  $T$  and  $K$  to be observed directly from market.  $T_{min}$  is the earliest expiry to be included in the training set. We train the model based on the training and validation sets. We get the hedging position from either  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  or  $\text{GRU}_{\text{LOCAL}}$  for  $t_0$  only:  $\delta_{t_0, T, K}^M$  where  $(T, K) \in Test_{T, K}$

---

<sup>3</sup>If we fixed the gap between two rebalancing time to be  $\Delta t$  and we fix the number of times we rebalance the hedging portfolio to be  $N_{rb}$ , then given a expiry  $T$ , one can easily deduct the rebalance time  $\{t_0, t_1, \dots, t_{N_{rb}-1}\}$ . Therefore, we can uniquely define a hedging scenario just by  $T$  and  $K$

3. Similarly, on any rebalancing date  $t_j$ , we prepare the training set and validation set to be

$$Train_{T,K} = \{(T,K) | T_{min} \leq T < t_j, K \in \mathbf{K}_{grid,T}^{Aug}\}$$

$$Val_{T,K} = \{(T,K) | T = t_j, K \in \mathbf{K}_{grid,T}^{Aug}\}$$

We retain the model from previous rebalancing date  $t_{j-1}$  and we update the model based on the new training and validation sets. We get the hedging position from either  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  or  $GRU_{LOCAL}$  for  $t_j$  only:  $\delta_{t_j,T,K}^M$  where  $(T,K) \in Test_{T,K}$

Notice that in setp 3, we have included new data into the training and validation sets since the range for the allowed expiries in training set is extended from  $T_{min} \leq T < t_{j-1}$  to be  $T_{min} \leq T < t_j$ .

### 6.3 Total Discrete Hedging Performance Comparison Using S&P 500 index Options

Using the S&P 500 (European) index option market data from September 1, 1996 to August 31, 2015, we compare the total hedging performance of different hedging strategies. We evaluate the total hedging performance using the following 5 criteria:

1. The mean absolute value of the relative hedging error:

$$Mean_{(t_0,T,K)} \left( \left| \frac{D(t_0,T)P_H(T,T,K)}{V_{t_0,T,K}^{mkt}} \right| \right)$$

for all the testing scenarios.

2. The 95% Value-at-Risk (VaR) of the relative total hedging error  $\frac{D(t_0,T)P_H(T,T,K)}{V_{t_0,T,K}^{mkt}}$
3. The 95% Conditional-Value-at-Risk (CVaR) of the relative total hedging error  $\frac{D(t_0,T)P_H(T,T,K)}{V_{t_0,T,K}^{mkt}}$
4. The 99% Value-at-Risk (VaR) of the relative total hedging error  $\frac{D(t_0,T)P_H(T,T,K)}{V_{t_0,T,K}^{mkt}}$
5. The 99% Conditional-Value-at-Risk (CVaR) of the relative total hedging error  $\frac{D(t_0,T)P_H(T,T,K)}{V_{t_0,T,K}^{mkt}}$

We test on the real expiries and real strikes in market. We build the models following the model building procedure as in section 6.2.3. The combined testing set is defined as:

$$AllTestSet = \{(T,K) | 2000-01-01 \leq T \leq 2015-08-31, K \in \mathbf{K}_{t_0,T}^{mkt}, T \text{ is a market observed expiry}\}$$

Namely, we test on all the market observed combinations of  $(T, K)$  where the expiry  $T$  is between 2000-0-01 to 2015-08-31. Note that, we have included two crisis periods: the burst of dot-com bubble period (2000 to 2002) and subprime mortgage crisis period (2007 to 2008).

### 6.3.1 Data and Experimental Setting

The sequential inputs to  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  and  $\text{GRU}_{\text{LOCAL}}$ ,  $\mathbf{Y}_t^{T,K}$ , at a rebalancing time  $t$ , at each hedging time  $t$ , are the historical time series recorded daily from previous rebalancing time  $t - \Delta t$  to current rebalancing time  $t$  for the following features:

Option middle price
Black–Scholes implied volatility
Black–Scholes delta
Black–Scholes vega
Bartlett delta
Time to expiry
S&P500 index price
VIX index price
The moneyness $S/K$
Minimum variance delta $\delta_{MV}$ (2.3.4)
Strike $K$

Table 6.1: Sequential features for  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  and  $\text{GRU}_{\text{LOCAL}}$  at time  $t$  are the historical time series of features listed in this table.

The number of hidden states, for the single-layer GRU encoder, the neural network outputting  $\hat{\delta}_{t,T,K}^M$ , and the neural network outputting  $W_\delta$  in Figure 6.2, are all set to be 5. Specifically, we compare with the following methods,

- $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$ : the model shown in Figure 6.2 which is trained with the total risk objective (6.2.2).
- $\text{GRU}_{\text{LOCAL}}$ : the model shown in Figure 6.2 which is trained with the local risk objective (6.2.3),
- Bartlett: Bartlett corrective delta based on (2.3.16),
- BS: Black–Scholes delta based on the implied volatility

The hedging period is fixed to be 100 business days. We have two different hedging frequencies: weekly and monthly hedging. For weekly hedging, we rebalance every 5 business days so the number of rebalancing times is  $N_{rb} = 20$ . For monthly hedging, we rebalance every 20 business days so the number of rebalancing times is  $N_{rb} = 5$ .



### 6.3.2 Call Option Total Hedging Comparison

In this subsection, we present the results for call options. We show the hedging performance for Near-The-Money(NTM), In-The-Money(ITM), Out-of-The-Money(OTM) separately. The NTM, OTM, and ITM scenarios are classified based on the Black-Scholes delta at the initial date  $t_0$  where we set up the hedging portfolio:  $\delta_{t_0,T,K}^{BS}$ . For call option, the criteria is:

- Near-The-Money(NTM):  $0.3 \leq \delta_{t_0,T,K}^{BS} < 0.7$
- In-The-Money(ITM):  $0.7 \leq \delta_{t_0,T,K}^{BS} < 0.95$
- Out-of-The-Money(OTM):  $0.05 \leq \delta_{t_0,T,K}^{BS} < 0.3$

We omit the testing scenarios for deep in-the-money and deep out-of-the money options due to the fact that they are highly illiquid in market and their market quotes are highly unreliable. Also, the deep in-the-money and deep out-of-the money options are deleted from training set and validation set.

- Deep In-The-Money(ITM):  $0.95 \leq \delta_{t_0,T,K}^{BS} < 1.0$
- Deep Out-of-The-Money(OTM):  $0.0 \leq \delta_{t_0,T,K}^{BS} < 0.05$

### Call Option Weekly Hedging Comparison

In Table 6.2, we demonstrate the results on weekly hedging call options. Furthermore, in Figure 6.3, Figure 6.4, and Figure 6.5, we compare the distribution of the relative hedging error of  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  with the distributions of the relative hedging error of  $GRU_{LOCAL}$ , BS model, and Bartlett model respectively.

From Table 6.2, we can see that,  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  performs better than the other three methods in terms of mean absolute relative hedging error for NTM and OTM scenarios. Although BS model performs slightly better than  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  for ITM scenarios. The difference between  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  and BS model is small for ITM scenarios. Additionally,  $GRU_{TOTAL}$ , in most of cases, are the best performing model in terms of VaR and CVaR, indicating that  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  performs better in reducing tail risk on the loss. The exceptions are as the following:

- $GRU_{LOCAL}$  performs best in terms of CVaR(99%) for NTM scenarios and ITM scenarios. From Figure 6.3 (a) and (b), we can see that, the extreme tail on the loss side from  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  is worse than  $GRU_{LOCAL}$
- BS model performs best in terms of VaR(99%) and CVaR(99%) for OTM scenarios. This is an interesting observation. From 6.4 (c), We also note that the extreme tail on the profit side from BS model on OTM scenarios is actually longer than the other three models, indicating a larger probability of getting big profit.

		Near-The-Money	In-The-Money	Out-of-The-Money
Mean Abs Error	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	<b>0.1927</b>	0.0571	<b>0.7344</b>
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	0.2250	0.0866	0.8285
	Bartlett	0.2347	0.0641	0.7383
	BS	0.2198	<b>0.0531</b>	0.9706
VaR (95%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	<b>-0.2827</b>	<b>-0.1121</b>	<b>-0.5298</b>
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-0.3622	-0.1806	-0.5753
	Bartlett	-0.4836	-0.1656	-0.9841
	BS	-0.4823	-0.1523	-0.8603
CVaR (95%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	<b>-0.4721</b>	<b>-0.1865</b>	<b>-1.0003</b>
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-0.5643	-0.2081	-1.1673
	Bartlett	-0.7103	-0.2192	-1.4232
	BS	-0.7009	-0.2724	-1.2299
VaR (99%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	<b>-0.5301</b>	<b>-0.1976</b>	-1.5077
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-0.6361	-0.2168	-1.3583
	Bartlett	-0.778	-0.2654	-1.6152
	BS	-0.7171	-0.3653	<b>-1.3363</b>
CVaR (99%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	-0.8205	-0.3261	-1.6090
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	<b>-0.7942</b>	<b>-0.2301</b>	-2.1206
	Bartlett	-1.0827	-0.2883	-2.1225
	BS	-1.0040	-0.4712	<b>-1.6074</b>

Table 6.2: Summary of weekly hedging S&P 500 call options for 100 business days with total hedging evaluation criteria. Please note that the total hedging evaluation in this table assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading.

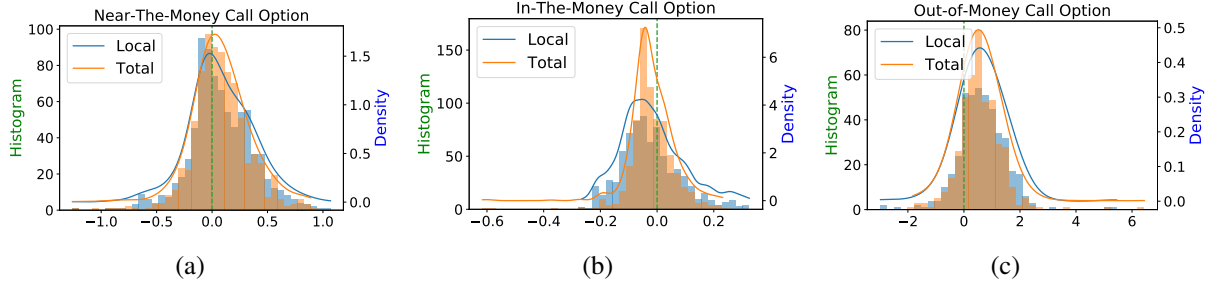


Figure 6.3: Comparing total model  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  and local model  $GRU_{LOCAL}$  on weekly hedging S&P 500 call options in terms of the distribution of the relative hedging portfolio value at the expiries Please note that the distribution in this figure assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading.

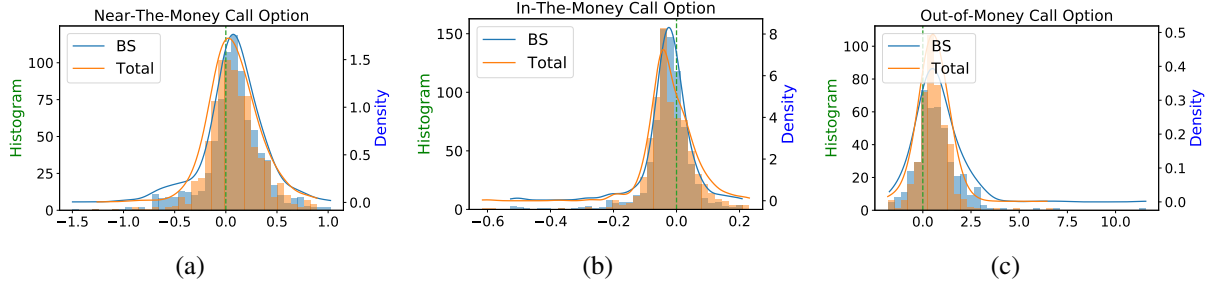


Figure 6.4: Comparing total model  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  and BS Model on weekly hedging S&P 500 call options in terms of the the distribution of the relative hedging portfolio value at the expiries. Please note that the distribution in this figure assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading.

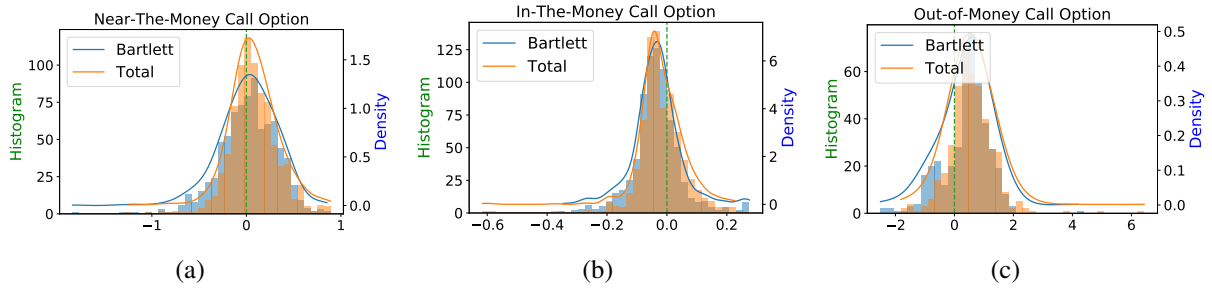


Figure 6.5: Comparing total model  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  and Bartlett model on weekly hedging S&P 500 call options in terms of the distribution of the relative hedging portfolio value at the expiries. Please note that the distribution in this figure assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading.

Another interesting observation is that Bartlett delta actually performs worse than BS delta in most of the cases as shown in Table 6.2. We suspect that this is due to the fact that SABR model was originally designed for modeling interest rate derivatives, the time to maturity for which is usually bigger than one-year, and it is less suitable to model option surface with extreme short time to maturity[30]. For weekly hedging, we have used SABR model to produce Bartlett delta with extremely small time to maturity, e.g., 5/250 for the last rebalancing time. Notice that in chapter 5 when we compare models on local risk criteria, options with time-to-expiry less than 14 days are removed from the data set. Therefore, we did not notice this phenomenon.

### Call Option Monthly Hedging Comparison

In Table 6.3, we demonstrate the results on monthly hedging call options. Furthermore, in Figure 6.6, Figure 6.7, and Figure 6.8, we compare the distribution of the relative hedging error of  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  with the distributions of the relative hedging error of  $GRU_{LOCAL}$ , BS model, and Bartlett model respectively.

From Table 6.3, we can see that,  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  performs better than the other three methods in terms of mean absolute relative hedging error for NTM and ITM scenarios. Bartlett method performs best in terms of mean absolute relative hedging error for OTM scenarios. In terms of VaR and CVaR, by comparing Table 6.3 and Table 6.2,  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  is less dominant in monthly hedging call options than in weekly hedging call options.  $GRU_{LOCAL}$  produces the smallest  $VaR(95\%)$  for NTM, ITM and OTM scenarios. Bartlett delta produces best  $VaR(99\%)$  and  $CVaR(99\%)$  for NTM scenarios. However, from Table 6.3 we can also see, the performance of  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  is usually very close to best performance even if  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  is not the dominant model in terms of certain criteria.

On the other hand, from Figure 6.6 (c) and 6.7 (c), we can see that, for OTM scenarios,  $GRU_{LOCAL}$  and BS model produce longer tail on the profit side and shorter tail on the loss side when comparing with  $GRU_{TOTAL}$ . Besides, from 6.8 (c), we can see that, for OTM scenarios, Bartlett method has the shorter tail for both the loss side and profit side when comparing with  $GRU_{TOTAL}$ .

		Near-The-Money	In-The-Money	Out-of-The-Money
Mean Abs Error	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	<b>0.2643</b>	<b>0.0633</b>	1.0479
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	0.2740	0.0642	1.2255
	Bartlett	0.282	0.073	<b>0.9674</b>
	BS	0.2865	0.0655	1.3248
VaR (95%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	-0.4102	-0.1472	-1.0842
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	<b>-0.3998</b>	<b>-0.1394</b>	<b>-0.9531</b>
	Bartlett	-0.4775	-0.1611	-1.1936
	BS	-0.5115	-0.1554	-1.3442
CVaR (95%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	<b>-0.6073</b>	<b>-0.3125</b>	<b>-1.6658</b>
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-0.6671	-0.3144	-1.6962
	Bartlett	-0.6680	-0.3372	-2.0221
	BS	-0.9735	-0.4380	-2.0016
VaR (99%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	-0.7752	<b>-0.4300</b>	<b>-1.7567</b>
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-0.8703	-0.4329	-1.9142
	Bartlett	<b>-0.7201</b>	-0.4815	-2.3799
	BS	-1.2384	-0.6058	-2.8419
CVaR (99%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	-0.8692	<b>-0.4627</b>	-2.7536
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-1.0861	-0.4670	<b>-2.5194</b>
	Bartlett	<b>-0.8090</b>	-0.5725	-2.8797
	BS	-1.2864	-0.7859	-3.0839

Table 6.3: Summary of monthly hedging S&P 500 call options for 100 business days with total hedging evaluation criteria. Please note that the total hedging evaluation in this table assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading.

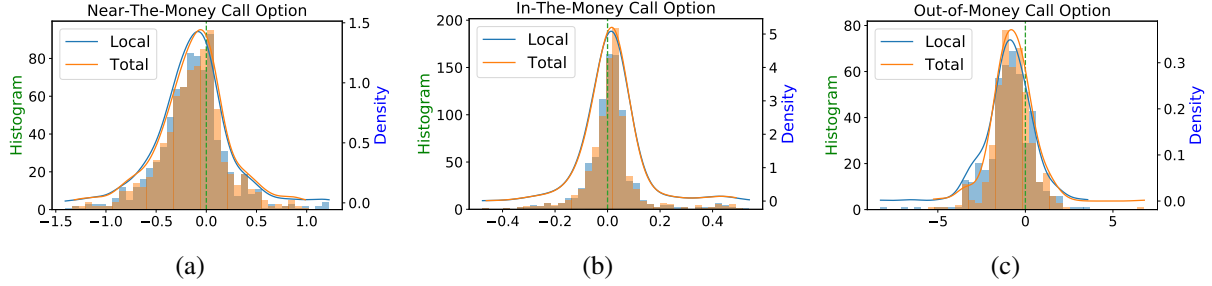


Figure 6.6: Comparing total model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  and local model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{LOCAL}}$  on monthly hedging S&P 500 call options in terms of the distribution of the relative hedging portfolio value at the expiries. Please note that the distribution in this figure assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading.

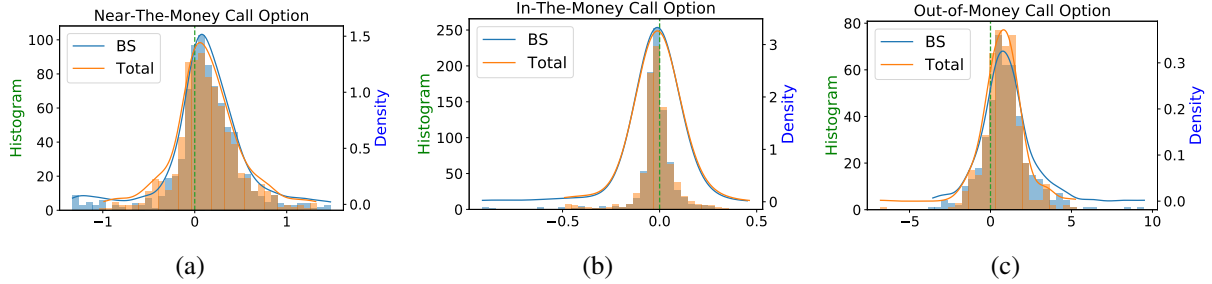


Figure 6.7: Comparing total model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  and BS model on monthly hedging S&P 500 call options in terms of the distribution of the relative hedging portfolio value at the expiries. Please note that the distribution in this figure assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading.

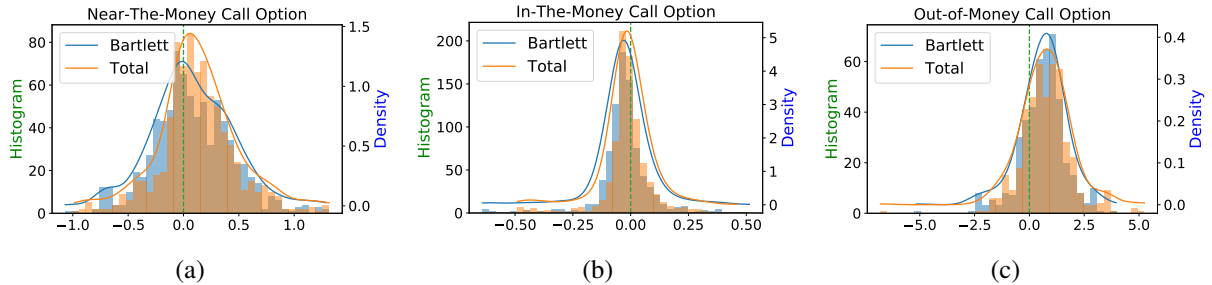


Figure 6.8: Comparing total model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  and bartlett model on monthly hedging S&P 500 call options in terms of the distribution of the relative hedging portfolio value at the expiries. Please note that the distribution in this figure assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading.

### 6.3.3 Put Option Total Hedging Comparison

In this subsection, we present the results for put options. We again show the hedging performance for Near-The-Money(NTM), In-The-Money(ITM), Out-of-The-Money(OTM) separately. The NTM, OTM, and ITM scenarios are classified based on the Black-Scholes delta at the initial date  $t_0$  where we set up the hedging portfolio:  $\delta_{t_0,T,K}^{BS}$ . For put option, the criteria is:

- Near-The-Money(NTM):  $-0.3 \geq \delta_{t_0,T,K}^{BS} > -0.7$
- In-The-Money(ITM):  $-0.7 \geq \delta_{t_0,T,K}^{BS} > -0.95$
- Out-of-The-Money(OTM):  $-0.05 \geq \delta_{t_0,T,K}^{BS} > -0.3$

We omit the testing scenarios for deep in-the-money and deep out-of-the money options due to the fact that they are highly illiquid in market and their market quotes are highly unreliable. Also, the deep in-the-money and deep out-of-the money options are deleted from training set and validation set.

- Deep Out-of-The-Money(OTM):  $0.0 \geq \delta_{t_0,T,K}^{BS} > -0.05$
- Deep In-The-Money(ITM):  $-0.95 \geq \delta_{t_0,T,K}^{BS} > -1.0$

### Put Option Weekly Hedging Comparison

In Table 6.4, we demonstrate the results on monthly hedging put options. Furthermore, in Figure 6.9, Figure 6.11, and Figure 6.10, we compare the distribution of the relative hedging error of  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  with the distributions of the relative hedging error of  $\text{GRU}_{\text{LOCAL}}$ , BS model, and Bartlett model respectively.

From Table 6.4, we can see that,  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  is the dominant methods for weekly hedging put options in terms of most of the criteria for NTM, ITM, and OTM scenarios. There are only two exception:  $\text{GRU}_{\text{LOCAL}}$  performs slightly better than  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  for NTM scenarios for mean absolute relative hedging error and Bartlett delta performs slightly better than  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  for OTM scenarios for mean absolute relative hedging error.

Another interesting observation is that, for put option, the loss tail of the relative hedging distribution is significantly longer than call option. We suspect this is due to the fact that selling put option during market crisis period can lead to significant loss as the original NTM or ITM option can become out-of-the money in a short period of time especially when we are getting closer to the expiry.

		Near-The-Money	In-The-Money	Out-of-The-Money
Mean Abs Error	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	0.2535	<b>0.0965</b>	1.5356
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	<b>0.2516</b>	0.1140	1.6042
	Bartlett	0.2993	0.167	<b>1.4815</b>
	BS	0.2773	0.1227	1.7109
VaR (95%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	<b>-0.8124</b>	<b>-0.2364</b>	<b>-7.2478</b>
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-0.8229	-0.3160	-8.0506
	Bartlett	-0.9374	-0.5133	-8.5614
	BS	-0.8854	-0.4274	-8.7374
CVaR (95%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	<b>-1.0475</b>	<b>-0.3452</b>	<b>-10.9438</b>
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-1.2335	-0.5405	-11.8778
	Bartlett	-1.4781	-0.8078	-12.2226
	BS	-1.4812	-0.7236	-13.3299
VaR (99%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	<b>-1.1138</b>	<b>-0.3763</b>	<b>-11.7573</b>
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-1.4361	-0.7996	-14.5369
	Bartlett	-1.6118	-0.99	-12.2933
	BS	-1.7625	-0.7979	-19.0822
CVaR(99%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	<b>-1.3597</b>	<b>-0.4616</b>	<b>-15.1555</b>
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-1.7732	-0.9739	-17.0642
	Bartlett	-2.3355	-1.2264	-17.4385
	BS	-2.2831	-1.1347	-20.6413

Table 6.4: Summary of weekly hedging S&P 500 put options for 100 Business days with total hedging evaluation criteria. Please note that the total hedging evaluation in this table assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading.



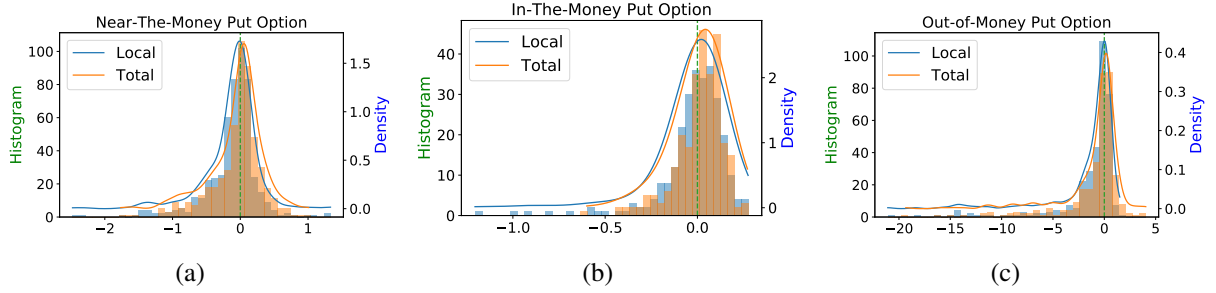


Figure 6.9: Comparing total model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  and local model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{LOCAL}}$  on weekly hedging put options in terms of the distribution of the relative hedging portfolio value at the expiries. Please note that the distribution in this figure assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading.

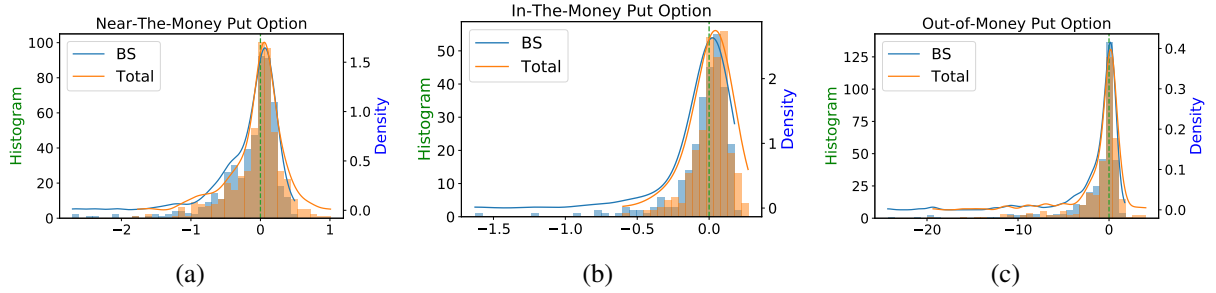


Figure 6.10: Comparing total model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  and BS model on weekly hedging put options in terms of the distribution of the relative hedging portfolio value at the expiries. Please note that the distribution in this figure assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading.

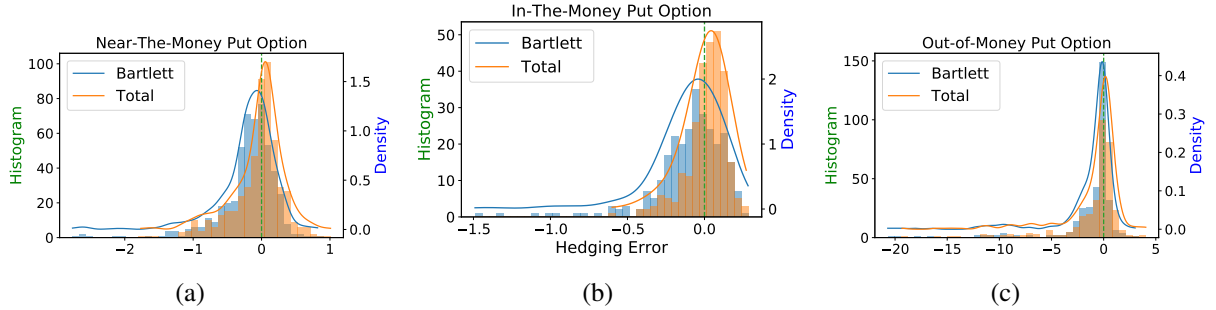


Figure 6.11: Comparing total model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  and Bartlett model on weekly hedging put options in terms of the distribution of the relative hedging portfolio value at the expiries. Please note that the distribution in this figure assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading.

## Put Option Monthly Hedging Comparison

In Table 6.5, we demonstrate the results on monthly hedging put options. Furthermore, in Figure 6.12, Figure 6.13, and Figure 6.14, we compare the distribution of the relative hedging error of  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  with the distributions of the relative hedging error of  $GRU_{LOCAL}$ , BS model, and Bartlett model respectively.

From Table 6.5, we can see that,  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  is still the dominant method for monthly hedging put options in terms of most of the criteria for NTM, ITM, and OTM scenarios. However, by comparing Table 6.4 and Table 6.5, we can see  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  is less dominant in monthly hedging than in weekly hedging. In certain case, Bartlett methods can perform much better. For instance, for NTM scenarios, the CVaR (95%) and CVaR (99%) from Bartlett method is significantly better than the other three comparing methods. Another interesting observation is that the  $GRU_{TOTAL}$

		Near-The-Money	In-The-Money	Out-of-The-Money
Mean Abs Error	$GRU_{TOTAL}$	<b>0.2986</b>	<b>0.1240</b>	1.7639
	$GRU_{LOCAL}$	0.3485	0.1394	<b>1.6849</b>
	Bartlett	0.3205	0.1583	1.7383
	BS	0.3224	0.1342	1.8482
VaR (95%)	$GRU_{TOTAL}$	<b>-0.7395</b>	<b>-0.2562</b>	-8.5602
	$GRU_{LOCAL}$	-0.7558	-0.3268	<b>-8.1812</b>
	Bartlett	-0.8370	-0.3583	-9.0303
	BS	-0.7768	-0.3088	-9.7018
CVaR (95%)	$GRU_{TOTAL}$	-1.7761	<b>-0.3577</b>	<b>-13.3160</b>
	$GRU_{LOCAL}$	-1.8144	-0.4898	-14.6857
	Bartlett	<b>-1.5710</b>	-0.6016	-14.4425
	BS	-1.8682	-0.5401	-16.1024
VaR (99%)	$GRU_{TOTAL}$	-2.1792	<b>-0.4121</b>	-15.2323
	$GRU_{LOCAL}$	<b>-2.1577</b>	-0.6454	-16.5192
	Bartlett	-2.9164	-0.7728	<b>-15.0144</b>
	BS	-2.5569	-0.7583	-15.8393
CVaR (99%)	$GRU_{TOTAL}$	-3.4001	<b>-0.4509</b>	<b>-20.6503</b>
	$GRU_{LOCAL}$	-3.3717	-0.6910	-21.7928
	Bartlett	<b>-2.9164</b>	-0.8463	-24.1757
	BS	-3.5486	-0.8109	-26.4941

Table 6.5: Summary of monthly hedging S&P 500 put options for 100 business days with total hedging evaluation criteria. Please note that the total hedging evaluation in this table assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading.

produces longer tail for NTM and OTM scenarios on the profit side while for ITM scenarios,  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  has a much shorter tail on the loss side.

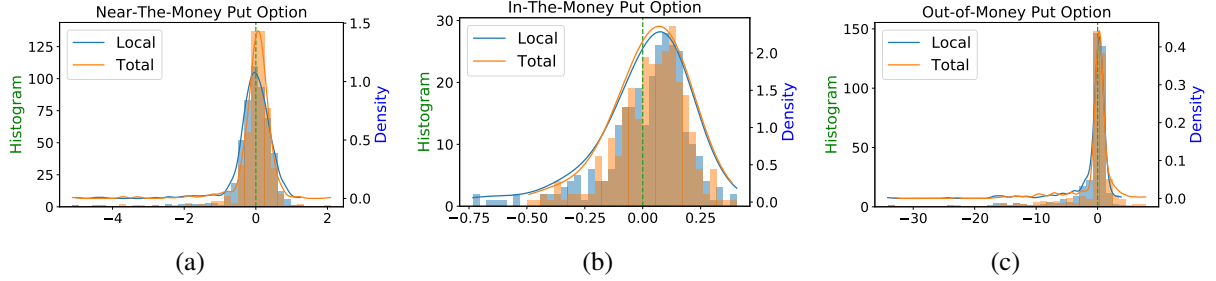


Figure 6.12: Comparing total model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  and local model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{LOCAL}}$  on monthly hedging put options in terms of the distribution of the relative hedging portfolio value at the expiries. Please note that the distribution in this figure assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading.

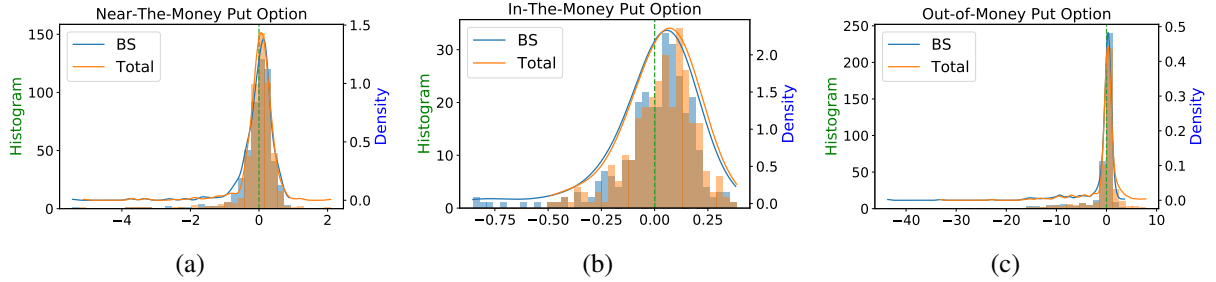


Figure 6.13: Comparing total model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  and BS model on monthly hedging put options in terms of the distribution of the relative hedging portfolio value at the expiries. Please note that the distribution in this figure assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading.

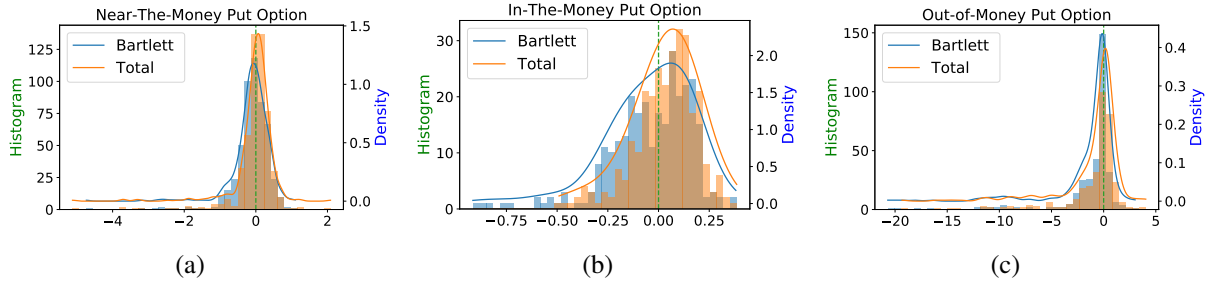


Figure 6.14: Comparing total model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  and Bartlett model on monthly hedging put options in terms of the distribution of the relative hedging portfolio value at the expiries. Please note that the distribution in this figure assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading.

### 6.3.4 Sell-Side Risk Versus Buy-Side Risk

In previous section, we mainly evaluate the hedging performance assuming we are at the sell-side of the option trading. Namely, we assume that we are shorting an option. In this subsection, we look at the risk on the buy-side. More specifically, assuming we are now at the buy-side of the option trading, we set up the hedging portfolio as:

- A long position on option  $V^{mkt}(t, T, K)$
- Short  $-\delta_{t,T,K}^M$  (or long if  $\delta_{t,T,K}^M < 0$ ) shares of  $S(t)$
- An amount in a risk-free bank account  $B(t)$

Let  $P_H^B(T, T, H)$  be the hedging portfolio value of the buy-side at the expiry. One can easily verify that:  $P_H^B(T, T, H) = -P_H(T, T, H)$ , where  $P_H(T, T, H)$  is the side-side hedging portfolio value at the expiry given by equation (6.2.1). The profit on the sell-side hedging portfolio ( $P_H(T, T, H) > 0$ ) becomes the loss on the buy-side hedging portfolio ( $P_H^B(T, T, H) < 0$ ). In other words, if we notice that we have a long tail on the profit side of PnL (Profit and Loss) distribution at the sell-side, then we will have a long tail on the loss side of PnL distribution at the buy-side. We notice from the analysis of distribution of relative hedging error in previous section, with  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  and  $GRU_{LOCAL}$ , the sell-side loss is reduced significantly. But we also noticed that this reduction of the sell-side loss sometimes comes with a increase of the loss on the buy-side. Meanwhile, we also notice this kind of trade-off also exists for BS model and Bartlett model.

To complete our comparison, we evaluate the total hedging performance using the following 4 criteria for the buy-side hedging portfolio  $P_H^B(T, T, H)$ :

1. The 95% Value-at-Risk (VaR) of the relative total hedging error  $\frac{D(t_0, T)P_H^B(T, T, K)}{V_{t_0, T, K}^{mkt}}$
2. The 95% Conditional-Value-at-Risk (CVaR) of the relative total hedging error  $\frac{D(t_0, T)P_H^B(T, T, K)}{V_{t_0, T, K}^{mkt}}$
3. The 99% Value-at-Risk (VaR) of the relative total hedging error  $\frac{D(t_0, T)P_H^B(T, T, K)}{V_{t_0, T, K}^{mkt}}$
4. The 99% Conditional-Value-at-Risk (CVaR) of the relative total hedging error  $\frac{D(t_0, T)P_H^B(T, T, K)}{V_{t_0, T, K}^{mkt}}$

Please note that  $P_H^B(T, T, K) = -P_H(T, T, H)$ .

#### Comparing Sell-Side Risk with Buy-Side Risk on Call Option

In Table 6.6 and Table 6.7, we demonstrate the results on weekly and monthly hedging call options at buy-side. By comparing Table 6.2 and Table 6.6 and comparing table 6.2 and Table 6.6, we have the following observations:

		Near-The-Money	In-The-Money	Out-of-The-Money
Mean Abs Error	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	<b>0.1927</b>	0.0571	<b>0.7344</b>
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	0.2250	0.0866	0.8285
	Bartlett	0.2347	0.0641	0.7383
	BS	0.2198	<b>0.0531</b>	0.9706
VaR (95%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	-0.5189	-0.1054	-1.6139
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-0.5692	-0.1763	-1.9182
	Bartlett	<b>-0.4630</b>	-0.0880	<b>-1.5149</b>
	BS	-0.4931	<b>-0.0696</b>	-2.6341
CVaR (95%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	-0.6464	-0.1509	-2.3918
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-0.7062	-0.2377	-2.4369
	Bartlett	<b>-0.5731</b>	-0.1632	<b>-1.7694</b>
	BS	-0.6833	<b>-0.1157</b>	-3.8273
VaR (99%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	-0.7778	-0.1861	-2.5132
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-0.8034	-0.2769	-2.3604
	Bartlett	<b>-0.6284</b>	-0.2477	<b>-1.7751</b>
	BS	-0.7510	<b>-0.1524</b>	-3.2443
CVaR (99%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	-0.8180	-0.2093	-3.8272
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-0.8837	-0.2965	-3.5071
	Bartlett	<b>-0.7426</b>	-0.2617	<b>-2.2728</b>
	BS	-0.8699	<b>-0.1173</b>	-5.9191

Table 6.6: Summary of weekly hedging S&P 500 call options for 100 business days with total hedging evaluation criteria. Please note that the total hedging evaluation in this table assumes we are at the buy-side of the option trading.

		Near-The-Money	In-The-Money	Out-of-The-Money
Mean Abs Error	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	<b>0.2643</b>	<b>0.0633</b>	1.0479
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	0.2740	0.0642	1.2255
	Bartlett	0.282	0.073	<b>0.9674</b>
	BS	0.2865	0.0655	1.3248
VaR (95%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	-0.7194	-0.1313	-2.4261
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-0.6955	-0.1365	-3.1978
	Bartlett	<b>-0.6504</b>	-0.1238	<b>-2.1608</b>
	BS	-0.7312	<b>-0.1128</b>	-3.5289
CVaR (95%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	-0.9148	-0.2181	-3.4331
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-0.9315	-0.2191	-3.9418
	Bartlett	<b>-0.8779</b>	-0.2345	<b>-2.7161</b>
	BS	-1.0158	<b>-0.1907</b>	-4.711
VaR (99%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	-1.0753	-0.2751	-3.5691
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-1.0929	-0.2768	-4.062
	Bartlett	<b>-1.0468</b>	-0.3147	<b>-2.9381</b>
	BS	-1.2136	<b>-0.2348</b>	-4.8304
CVaR (99%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	-1.1926	-0.3272	-4.2966
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-1.2134	-0.3283	-5.7881
	Bartlett	<b>-1.1678</b>	-0.3810	<b>-3.1807</b>
	BS	-1.3321	<b>-0.2948</b>	-6.651

Table 6.7: Summary of monthly hedging S&P 500 call options for 100 business days with total hedging evaluation criteria. Please note that the total hedging evaluation in this table assumes we are at the buy-side of the option trading.

1. In terms of VaR and CVaR, Bartlett delta is the worst model on the sell-side for weekly hedging NTM and OTM call options as shown in Table 6.2. But when we switch to buy-side, for weekly hedging NTM and OTM call options, Bartlett delta is the best performing model in terms of VaR and CVaR as shown in Table 6.6.
2. When we switch to buy-side, for monthly hedging NTM and OTM call options, Bartlett delta is the best performing model in terms of VaR and CVaR as shown in Table 6.7. At the sell-side as shown in Table 6.3, for OTM Call options, Bartlett delta is the second worst performing model in terms of VaR and CVaR.
3. In terms of VaR and CVaR, BS delta is the worst model on the sell-side for weekly and monthly hedging ITM call option as shown in Table 6.2 and Table 6.3. But when we switch to buy-side, BS delta is the best performing model in terms of VaR and CVaR as shown in Table 6.6 and Table 6.7. Additionally, for weekly hedging OTM option, the BS delta produces the smallest VaR(99%) and CVaR(99%) on the sell-side but the largest VaR(99%) and CVaR(99%) on the buy-side.
4. At the buy-side, for weekly and monthly hedging call option,  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  is neither the worst performing model nor the best performing model in terms of VaR and CVaR.
5. The  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  usually is the best or the second best model in terms of VaR and CVaR no matter we are at sell-side or buy-side for weekly and monthly hedging call option, as shown in Table 6.2, Table 6.6, Table 6.3 and Table 6.7.

### Comparing Sell-Side Risk with Buy-Side Risk on Put Option

In Table 6.8 and Table 6.9, we demonstrate the results on weekly and monthly hedging put options at buy-side. We notice the following by comparing Table 6.8 and Table 6.4 comparing Table 6.9 and Table 6.5:

1. The  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  usually is the best or the second best model in terms of VaR and CVaR at sell-side for weekly and monthly hedging put option, as shown in Table 6.4 and Table 6.5. As one can see the reduction at the loss tail from  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  at the sell-side is significant when compared with other models. When we switch to buy-side, the data-driven model  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  still performs reasonably well in terms of VaR and CVaR.  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  usually is the second best performing model at the buy-side for reducing the weekly hedging loss tail when compared with the BS model.

However, when we switch to buy-side as shown in Table 6.9,  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  does not perform well in terms of VaR and CVaR for monthly hedging OTM options. We suspect this is due to the fact that the distribution of relative hedging error for monthly hedging put options is very unbalanced as one can see in Figure 6.12 to 6.14. The heavily unbalanced nature of the hedging error distribution potentially damaged the performance of the  $GRU_{TOTAL}$  at buy-side for monthly hedging OTM options. We leave resolving this issue as the future work of our study.

2. In terms of VaR and CVaR, BS delta is the worst model or the second worst on the sell-side for weekly and monthly hedging put option as shown in Table 6.4 and Table 6.5. But when we switch to buy-side, BS delta is the best performing or the second best model in terms of VaR and CVaR as shown in table Table 6.8 and Table 6.9. Additionally, for monthly hedging OTM option, the BS delta produces the smallest VaR(99%) and CVaR(99%) on the buy-side but the largest VaR(99%) and CVaR(99%) on the sell-side.
3. At the sell-side, GRU<sub>LOCAL</sub> significantly reduces the loss tail when compared with BS delta on weekly and monthly hedging put options. At the buy-side, the performance from GRU<sub>LOCAL</sub> is very close to BS delta on monthly and weekly hedging OTM put options. GRU<sub>LOCAL</sub> either underperforms or outperforms BS delta slightly on weekly and monthly hedging put options at the buy-side.

		Near-The-Money	In-The-Money	Out-of-The-Money
Mean Abs Error	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	0.2535	<b>0.0965</b>	1.5356
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	<b>0.2516</b>	0.1140	1.6042
	Bartlett	0.2993	0.167	<b>1.4815</b>
	BS	0.2773	0.1227	1.7109
VaR (95%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	-0.4113	-0.1754	-1.2127
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-0.3063	-0.1659	<b>-0.5048</b>
	Bartlett	-0.294	-0.1614	-0.6739
	BS	<b>-0.2692</b>	<b>-0.1398</b>	-0.6120
CVaR (95%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	-0.589	-0.2041	-1.9494
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-0.5611	-0.2055	<b>-0.8351</b>
	Bartlett	-0.4056	-0.2046	-1.2439
	BS	<b>-0.3515</b>	<b>-0.1594</b>	-0.8701
VaR (99%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	-0.6983	-0.2252	-2.3629
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-0.6925	-0.2389	-1.052
	Bartlett	-0.4668	-0.2222	-1.5293
	BS	<b>-0.4108</b>	<b>-0.171</b>	<b>-1.0188</b>
CVaR(99%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	-0.7835	-0.2476	-3.2214
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-0.9811	-0.2498	<b>-1.2042</b>
	Bartlett	-0.6232	-0.2415	-2.0532
	BS	<b>-0.4383</b>	<b>-0.1741</b>	-1.2597

Table 6.8: Summary of weekly hedging S&P 500 put options for 100 Business days with total hedging evaluation criteria. Please note that the total hedging evaluation in this table assumes we are at the sell-side of the option trading.



		Near-The-Money	In-The-Money	Out-of-The-Money
Mean Abs Error	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	<b>0.2986</b>	<b>0.1240</b>	1.7639
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	0.3485	0.1394	<b>1.6849</b>
	Bartlett	0.3205	0.1583	1.7383
	BS	0.3224	0.1342	1.8482
VaR (95%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	<b>-0.504</b>	-0.2428	-2.519
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-0.5766	-0.2363	-1.2493
	Bartlett	-0.4788	<b>-0.1968</b>	-1.2757
	BS	-0.518	-0.2159	<b>-0.9276</b>
CVaR (95%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	-0.7372	-0.2905	-4.2365
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-0.7496	-0.2924	-1.8623
	Bartlett	-0.6301	<b>-0.2556</b>	-2.4399
	BS	<b>-0.6164</b>	-0.2816	<b>-1.5589</b>
VaR (99%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	-0.7195	-0.3177	-5.3271
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-0.8031	-0.332	-2.0655
	Bartlett	-0.7157	<b>-0.2898</b>	-3.0177
	BS	<b>-0.6555</b>	-0.3227	<b>-1.7745</b>
CVaR (99%)	GRU <sub>TOTAL</sub>	-1.1155	-0.3448	-6.6073
	GRU <sub>LOCAL</sub>	-0.9367	-0.3655	-2.87
	Bartlett	-0.8404	<b>-0.3353</b>	-4.1933
	BS	<b>-0.7283</b>	-0.3498	<b>-2.4294</b>

Table 6.9: Summary of monthly hedging S&P 500 put options for 100 business days with total hedging evaluation criteria. Please note that the total hedging evaluation in this table assumes we are at the buy-side of the option trading.

# Chapter 7

## Conclusion and Future Work

In this thesis, we have proposed a direct kernel hedging model  $DKL_{SPL}$  and a novel encoder-decoder model,  $GRU_{\delta}$ , for discrete local risk option hedging. The  $DKL_{SPL}$  is our preliminary exploration on computing a data-driven local hedging model without estimating an option pricing model. The  $GRU_{\delta}$  is our enhancement to data-driven local hedging model.  $GRU_{\delta}$  consists of an encoder, which generates a concise representation of the past market information. The decoder uses the Black-Scholes delta as a pre-trained model and utilizes a gate to generate a predicative hedging model, combining the pre-trained delta model and the outputs from the encoder. Feature selections are implemented through normalized weights embedded in the model training. In addition, a data instance adaptive Huber loss function is incorporated for robustness, with the error from the pre-trained Black-Scholes delta model for each instance as the thresholding parameter.

Using the S&P 500 index and the index option data, from January 1, 2004, to August 31st, 2015, we assess and compare hedging performance of the  $GRU_{\delta}$  and  $DKL_{SPL}$  with other hedging strategies in terms of local risk criteria. For weekly and monthly hedging, computational results demonstrate that performance of the proposed  $GRU_{\delta}$  significantly surpasses that of the MV model, SABR-Bartlett, regularized spline kernel model  $DKL_{SPL}$ , all of which perform significantly better than the Black-Scholes model with implied volatility. In addition, the  $DKL_{SPL}$  also outperforms MV model in terms of weekly and monthly hedging results. We further demonstrate that the encoder for the sequential features plays a significant role in  $GRU_{\delta}$ , since removing the encoder deteriorates hedging performance. Lastly, by comparing the weekly and monthly hedging performance from  $GRU_c$  and  $GRU_{\delta}$ , we demonstrate that the output gate, robust loss and training procedure, also play significant roles in  $GRU_{\delta}$ .

We further demonstrate that the daily hedging performance of the proposed  $GRU_{\delta}$  also surpasses that of the MV hedging method, LVF and SABR corrective methods (implemented in [102]), data-driven regularized spline kernel network model  $DKL_{SPL}$ , and SABR-Bartlett. In addition,  $DKL_{SPL}$  also outperforms MV hedging method, LVF and SABR corrective methods (implemented in [102]).

Besides, from the testing hedging performance, we assess feature importance in  $GRU_{\delta}$  for the S&P 500 index option hedging. The monthly average feature weights identify the underlying

as the most important local feature and the past implied volatility sequence as the most important sequential feature during normal market periods.

To cope with total hedging scenarios, we derive a total risk model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  from  $\text{GRU}_{\delta}$  to extend the data-driven model to multi-step total hedging scenarios. To cope with the challenges of acquiring enough market option information for building data-driven hedging models, we augment the market data using SABR model and local volatility model. Using the S&P 500 index option market data from January 2, 2000 to August 31st, 2015, we compare the weekly and monthly hedging performance of the proposed total hedging model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  with the sequential data-driven local hedging model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{LOCAL}}$ , which adopts the same model structure but is trained with a local risk training objective, and the SABR-Bartlett method [15]. We measure the total hedging performance, which is evaluated on the expiries of the option. We demonstrate the effectiveness of the total hedging model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  in reducing the sell-side loss tail risk for both put and call options. We also demonstrate that the total hedging model  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  often leads to better hedging performance in terms of total hedging criteria when compared with  $\text{GRU}_{\text{LOCAL}}$ , SABR-Bartlett method, and Black-Scholes model. Lastly, we demonstrate that the  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  still performs reasonably well when we switch to buy-side except for monthly hedging OTM put option at buy-side, where  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  performs the worst in terms of VaR and CVaR. We provide some potential explanations for the poor performance of  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$  on monthly hedging OTM put option at buy-side and leave it as the future work of extending our study.

The main objective of this research is to assess hedging performance of strategies learned directly from the historical time series of the market option price and underlying price, using machine learning methods. Hedging performance comparisons between data-driven models  $\text{DKL}_{\text{SPL}}$ ,  $\text{GRU}_{\delta}$ ,  $\text{GRU}_{\text{TOTAL}}$ , and  $\text{GRU}_{\text{LOCAL}}$  and the classical option hedging based on parametric model calibration suggest that the data driven learning hedging can be a viable alternative to the classical methods, potentially leading to better hedging performance.

In terms of limitation of this research, we compare the data-driven models majorly with parametric models available in academic literature. We understand that the actual industry practice may not apply the parametric models in the same way as we did in this thesis for hedging derivatives. While it would also be interesting to compare hedging methods actually adopted in the financial industry, limitation in accessing actual industry practice makes it difficult to conduct such a study and make its results publicly available.

Additionally, comparing with the calibration of the traditional parametric pricing models, the learning process for the data-driven hedging model is less computationally efficient. Lastly, the learning process requires certain amount of historical data. For calibrating a parametric model, one usually needs much less data and can build the model based on market data observed on spot and compute the sensitivity as hedging position accordingly. Therefore, our proposed data-driven models are not directly applicable to the illiquid derivative markets.

For extending our work, we note that there are several directions:

- In this thesis, we rely on market data to gather the hedging scenarios. The volatility surface is calibrated from market data and underlying price paths are extracted from market with

overlapping period. Our models based on neural network approach contains less parameters compared with other applications of the deep learning techniques given the relative scarcity of available historical data. For future work, one can explore how we can use machine learning techniques to generate hedging scenarios so that we can combine artificial scenarios with real scenarios. This will enable us to build more complex model for hedging. Indeed, for this direction, there are already several attempts. For example, Bergeron et al. [17] apply the variational autoencoders [110] on generating synthetic volatility surface that are indistinguishable from those observed historically. Pardo and López [137] apply the Generative Adversarial Networks (GANs) [82] on learning the underlying structure inherent to the dynamics of financial series and acquiring the capacity to generate scenarios that share many similarities to those seen in the historic time series.

- In this thesis, we use S&P 500 index options for experimental comparison. It is interesting to explore on the effectiveness of the data-driven models on more complex derivatives such as basket options where the dimensionality of the underlying is higher.
- In this thesis, we have not include transaction cost into our models. A more realistic model should include the effect of the transaction cost as in [25].
- In this thesis, for total hedging model, we assume we rebalance every 5 business days or 20 business days. In reality, we do not have to fix the time gap between two rebalancing time. We can extend the model so that the data-driven model determines when is the best time to rebalance the hedging portfolio.

# References

- [1] Yacine Aït-Sahalia and Jefferson Duarte. Nonparametric option pricing under shape restrictions. *Journal of Econometrics*, 116(1):9–47, 2003.
- [2] Yacine Aït-Sahalia and Andrew W Lo. Nonparametric estimation of state-price densities implicit in financial asset prices. *The Journal of Finance*, 53(2):499–547, 1998.
- [3] C. Alexander, A. Kaeck, and L. M. Nogueira. Model risk adjusted hedge ratios. *Journal of Futures Markets*, 29(11):1021–1049, 2009.
- [4] Leif Andersen and Rupert Brotherton-Ratcliffe. The equity option volatility smile: an implicit finite-difference approach. *The Journal of Computational Finance*, 1(2):5–32, 1998.
- [5] Jesper Andreasen and Brian Norsk Høge. Volatility interpolation. *Available at SSRN 1694972*, 2010.
- [6] F. Angelini and S. Herzel. Measuring the error of dynamic hedging: a laplace transform approach. *Journal of Computational Finance*, 13:47–72, 2009.
- [7] F. Angelini and S. Herzel. Explicit formulas for the minimal hedging strategy in a martingale case. *Decisions in Economics and Finance*, 33:63–79, 2010.
- [8] Jimmy Lei Ba, Jamie Ryan Kiros, and Geoffrey E Hinton. Layer normalization. *arXiv preprint arXiv:1607.06450*, 2016.
- [9] Dzmitry Bahdanau, Kyunghyun Cho, and Yoshua Bengio. Neural machine translation by jointly learning to align and translate. *arXiv preprint arXiv:1409.0473*, 2014.
- [10] Gurdip Bakshi, Charles Cao, and Zhiwu Chen. *The Journal of finance*, 52(5):2003–2049, 1997.
- [11] Gurdip Bakshi, Charles Cao, and Zhiwu Chen. *The Journal of finance*, 52(5):2003–2049, 1997.
- [12] Gurdip Bakshi, Charles Cao, and Zhiwu Chen. Empirical performance of alternative option pricing models. *The Journal of finance*, 52(5):2003–2049, 1997.

- [13] Gurdip Bakshi, Charles Cao, and Zhiwu Chen. *The Journal of finance*, 52(5):2003–2049, 1997.
- [14] Gurdip Bakshi, Charles Cao, and Zhiwu Chen. *The Journal of finance*, 52(5):2003–2049, 1997.
- [15] Bruce Bartlett. Hedging under sabr model. *Wilmott magazine*, 4:2–4, 2006.
- [16] Julia Bennell and Charles Sutcliffe. Black–scholes versus artificial neural networks in pricing ftse 100 options. *Intelligent Systems in Accounting, Finance and Management*, 12 (4):243–260, 2004.
- [17] Maxime Bergeron, Nicholas Fung, Zissis Poulos, John C Hull, and Andreas Veneris. Variational autoencoders: A hands-off approach to volatility. *Available at SSRN 3827447*, 2021.
- [18] Fischer Black. The pricing of commodity contracts. *Journal of financial economics*, 3 (1-2):167–179, 1976.
- [19] Fischer Black and Myron Scholes. The pricing of options and corporate liabilities. *The journal of political economy*, pages 637–654, 1973.
- [20] Tim Bollerslev. Generalized autoregressive conditional heteroskedasticity. *Journal of econometrics*, 31(3):307–327, 1986.
- [21] Tim Bollerslev, Julia Litvinova, and George Tauchen. Leverage and volatility feedback effects in high-frequency data. *Journal of Financial Econometrics*, 4(3):353–384, 2006.
- [22] Matthew Brand. Fast online svd revisions for lightweight recommender systems. In *Proceedings of the 2003 SIAM International Conference on Data Mining*, pages 37–46. SIAM, 2003.
- [23] Mark Broadie, Jérôme Detemple, Eric Ghysels, and Olivier Torrès. American options with stochastic dividends and volatility: A nonparametric investigation. *Journal of Econometrics*, 94(1):53–92, 2000.
- [24] Mark Broadie, Jérôme Detemple, Eric Ghysels, and Olivier Torrès. Nonparametric estimation of american options’ exercise boundaries and call prices. *Journal of Economic Dynamics and Control*, 24(11):1829–1857, 2000.
- [25] Hans Buehler, Lukas Gonon, Ben Wood, Josef Teichmann, Baranidharan Mohan, and Jonathan Kochems. Deep hedging: Hedging derivatives under generic market frictions using reinforcement learning-machine learning version. *Available at SSRN*, 2019.
- [26] Richard H Byrd, Robert B Schnabel, and Gerald A Shultz. A trust region algorithm for nonlinearly constrained optimization. *SIAM Journal on Numerical Analysis*, 24(5):1152–1170, 1987.

- [27] P. Carr. European put call symmetry. pages 509–537. Cornell University working paper, 1994.
- [28] P. Carr, K. Ellis, and V. Gupta. Static hedging of exotic options. *Journal of Finance*, 53: 1165–1190, 1998.
- [29] Peter Carr and Dilip B Madan. A note on sufficient conditions for no arbitrage. *Finance Research Letters*, 2(3):125–130, 2005.
- [30] Bin Chen, Lech A Grzelak, and Cornelis W Oosterlee. Calibration and monte carlo pricing of the sabr-hull-white model for long-maturity equity derivatives. *The Journal of Computational Finance (79–113) Volume*, 15, 2011.
- [31] Xiaohong Chen. Large sample sieve estimation of semi-nonparametric models. *Handbook of econometrics*, 6:5549–5632, 2007.
- [32] Xiaohong Chen, Jeffrey Racine, and Norman R Swanson. Semiparametric arx neural-network models with an application to forecasting inflation. *IEEE Transactions on neural networks*, 12(4):674–683, 2001.
- [33] Xilun Chen and K Selcuk Candan. Lwi-svd: low-rank, windowed, incremental singular value decompositions on time-evolving data sets. In *Proceedings of the 20th ACM SIGKDD international conference on Knowledge discovery and data mining*, pages 987–996. ACM, 2014.
- [34] Shunfeng Cheng and Michael Pecht. Using cross-validation for model parameter selection of sequential probability ratio test. *Expert Systems with Applications*, 39(9):8467–8473, 2012.
- [35] Kyunghyun Cho, Bart Van Merriënboer, Caglar Gulcehre, Dzmitry Bahdanau, Fethi Bougares, Holger Schwenk, and Yoshua Bengio. Learning phrase representations using rnn encoder-decoder for statistical machine translation. *arXiv preprint arXiv:1406.1078*, 2014.
- [36] Kyunghyun Cho, Aaron Courville, and Yoshua Bengio. Describing multimedia content using attention-based encoder-decoder networks. *IEEE Transactions on Multimedia*, 17 (11):1875–1886, 2015.
- [37] Junyoung Chung, Caglar Gulcehre, KyungHyun Cho, and Yoshua Bengio. Empirical evaluation of gated recurrent neural networks on sequence modeling. *arXiv preprint arXiv:1412.3555*, 2014.
- [38] T. F. Coleman, Y. Li, and M. Patron. Total risk minimization using Monte-carlo simulations. In John R. Birge and Vadim Linetsky, editors, *Handbook of Financial Engineering*. Elsevier, 2007.

- [39] Thomas F. Coleman, Yuying Li, and Arun Verma. Reconstructing the unknown local volatility function. *The Journal of Computational Finance*, 2(3):77–102, 1999.
- [40] Thomas F Coleman, Yohan Kim, Yuying Li, and Arun Verma. Dynamic hedging with a deterministic local volatility function model. *The Journal of Risk*, 5(6):63–89, 2001.
- [41] Thomas F. Coleman, Yuying Li, and M. Patron. Discrete hedging under piecewise linear risk minimization. *The Journal of Risk*, 5:39–65, 2003.
- [42] Thomas F Coleman, Yuying Li, and Maria-Cristina Patron. Discrete hedging under piecewise linear risk-minimization. *Option Pricing, Interest Rates and Risk Management*, 5: 39–65, 2003.
- [43] Thomas F Coleman, Dmitriy Levchenkov, and Yuying Li. Discrete hedging of american-type options using local risk minimization. *Journal of Banking & Finance*, 31(11):3398–3419, 2007.
- [44] Thomas F Coleman, Yuying Li, and Maria-Cristina Patron. Total risk minimization using monte carlo simulations. *Handbooks in Operations Research and Management Science*, 15:593–635, 2007.
- [45] Ronan Collobert, Fabian Sinz, Jason Weston, and Léon Bottou. Trading convexity for scalability. In *Proceedings of the 23rd international conference on Machine learning*, pages 201–208. ACM, 2006.
- [46] Tim Cooijmans, Nicolas Ballas, César Laurent, Çağlar Gülçehre, and Aaron Courville. Recurrent batch normalization. *arXiv preprint arXiv:1603.09025*, 2016.
- [47] Jacopo Corbetta, Pierre Cohort, Ismail Laachir, and Claude Martini. Robust calibration and arbitrage-free interpolation of ssvi slices. *Decisions in Economics and Finance*, 42(2):665–677, 2019.
- [48] Corinna Cortes and Vladimir Vapnik. Support vector machine. *Machine learning*, 20(3): 273–297, 1995.
- [49] John C Cox, Jonathan E Ingersoll Jr, and Stephen A Ross. A theory of the term structure of interest rates. In *Theory of valuation*, pages 129–164. World Scientific, 2005.
- [50] S. Crépey. Delta-hedging vega risk. *Quantitative Finance*, 4(October):559–579, 2004.
- [51] Toby Daglish, John Hull, and Wulin Suo. Volatility surfaces: theory, rules of thumb, and empirical evidence. *Quantitative Finance*, 7(5):507–524, 2007.
- [52] E. Derman and I. Kani. Riding on a smile. *Risk*, 7:32–39, 1994.
- [53] E. Derman, I. Kani, and J. Zou. The local volatility surface: Unlocking the information in index option prices. *Financial Analysts Journal*, pages 25–36, 1996.



- [54] J Duan, Genevieve Gauthier, J Simonato, and Caroline Sasseville. Approximating the gjr-garch and egarch option pricing models analytically. *Journal of Computational Finance*, 9(3):41, 2006.
- [55] Jin-Chuan Duan. The garch option pricing model. *Mathematical finance*, 5(1):13–32, 1995.
- [56] Jin-Chuan Duan, Genevieve Gauthier, and Jean-Guy Simonato. *An analytical approximation for the GARCH option pricing model*. École des hautes études commerciales, Groupe de recherche en finance, 1997.
- [57] John Duchi, Elad Hazan, and Yoram Singer. Adaptive subgradient methods for online learning and stochastic optimization. *Journal of Machine Learning Research*, 12(Jul): 2121–2159, 2011.
- [58] Bernard Dumas, Jeff Fleming, and Robert E Whaley. Implied volatility functions: Empirical tests. *The Journal of Finance*, 53(6):2059–2106, 1998.
- [59] B. Dupire. Pricing with a smile. *Risk*, 7:18–20, 1994.
- [60] Bruno Dupire et al. Pricing with a smile. *Risk*, 7(1):18–20, 1994.
- [61] Nicole El Karoui and Marie-Claire Quenez. Dynamic programming and pricing of contingent claims in an incomplete market. *SIAM journal on Control and Optimization*, 33(1):29–66, 1995.
- [62] Jeffrey L Elman. Finding structure in time. *Cognitive science*, 14(2):179–211, 1990.
- [63] Robert F Engle. Autoregressive conditional heteroscedasticity with estimates of the variance of united kingdom inflation. *Econometrica: Journal of the Econometric Society*, pages 987–1007, 1982.
- [64] Marcelo Espinoza, Johan AK Suykens, and Bart De Moor. Fixed-size least squares support vector machines: A large scale application in electrical load forecasting. *Computational Management Science*, 3(2):113–129, 2006.
- [65] Theodoros Evgeniou, Massimiliano Pontil, and Tomaso Poggio. Regularization networks and support vector machines. *Advances in computational mathematics*, 13(1):1–50, 2000.
- [66] Yunlong Feng, Yuning Yang, Xiaolin Huang, Siamak Mehrkanoon, and Johan AK Suykens. Robust support vector machines for classification with nonconvex and smooth losses. *Neural computation*, 2016.
- [67] Roger Fletcher. *Practical methods of optimization*. John Wiley & Sons, 2013.
- [68] H. Föllmer and M. Schweizer. Hedging by sequential regression: An introduction to the mathematics of option trading. *The ASTIN Bulletin*, 1:147–160, 1989.

- [69] Hans Föllmer and Peter Leukert. Quantile hedging. *Finance and Stochastics*, 3(3):251–273, 1999.
- [70] Hans Föllmer and Peter Leukert. Efficient hedging: cost versus shortfall risk. *Finance and Stochastics*, 4(2):117–146, 2000.
- [71] Kenneth R French, G William Schwert, and Robert F Stambaugh. Expected stock returns and volatility. *Journal of financial Economics*, 19(1):3–29, 1987.
- [72] Jerome Friedman, Trevor Hastie, and Robert Tibshirani. *The elements of statistical learning*, volume 1. Springer series in statistics Springer, Berlin, 2001.
- [73] René Garcia and Ramazan Gençay. Pricing and hedging derivative securities with neural networks and a homogeneity hint. *Journal of Econometrics*, 94(1):93–115, 2000.
- [74] Jim Gatheral. A parsimonious arbitrage-free implied volatility parameterization with application to the valuation of volatility derivatives. *Presentation at Global Derivatives & Risk Management, Madrid*, page 0, 2004.
- [75] Jim Gatheral. *The volatility surface: a practitioner’s guide*, volume 357. John Wiley & Sons, 2011.
- [76] Jim Gatheral and Antoine Jacquier. Arbitrage-free svi volatility surfaces. *Quantitative Finance*, 14(1):59–71, 2014.
- [77] Ramazan Gençay and Min Qi. Pricing and hedging derivative securities with neural networks: Bayesian regularization, early stopping, and bagging. *IEEE Transactions on Neural Networks*, 12(4):726–734, 2001.
- [78] Ramazan Gençay, Aslihan Salih, et al. Degree of mispricing with the black-scholes model and nonparametric cures. *Annals of Economics and Finance*, 4:73–102, 2003.
- [79] Federico Girosi, Michael Jones, and Tomaso Poggio. Regularization theory and neural networks architectures. *Neural computation*, 7(2):219–269, 1995.
- [80] Ian Goodfellow, Yoshua Bengio, and Aaron Courville. *Deep Learning*. MIT Press, 2016. <http://www.deeplearningbook.org>.
- [81] Ian Goodfellow, Yoshua Bengio, and Aaron Courville. *Deep learning*. MIT press, 2016.
- [82] Ian J Goodfellow, Jean Pouget-Abadie, Mehdi Mirza, Bing Xu, David Warde-Farley, Sherjil Ozair, Aaron Courville, and Yoshua Bengio. Generative adversarial networks. *arXiv preprint arXiv:1406.2661*, 2014.
- [83] S. Goutte, N. Oudjane, and F. Russo. Variance optimal hedging for discrete time processes with independent increments, application to electricity markets. *Journal of Computational Finance*, 17:71–111, 2013.

- [84] Nikola Gradojevic, Ramazan Gençay, and Dragan Kukolj. Option pricing with modular neural networks. *IEEE transactions on neural networks*, 20(4):626–637, 2009.
- [85] Ming Gu and Stanley C Eisenstat. A stable and fast algorithm for updating the singular value decomposition, 1994.
- [86] Isabelle Guyon and André Elisseeff. An introduction to variable and feature selection. *Journal of machine learning research*, 3(Mar):1157–1182, 2003.
- [87] Isabelle Guyon, Jason Weston, Stephen Barnhill, and Vladimir Vapnik. Gene selection for cancer classification using support vector machines. *Machine learning*, 46(1-3):389–422, 2002.
- [88] Patrick Hagan and Andrew Lesniewski. Bartlett’s delta in the sabr model. *Available at SSRN 2950749*, 2017.
- [89] Patrick S Hagan, Deep Kumar, Andrew S Lesniewski, and Diana E Woodward. Managing smile risk. *The Best of Wilmott*, page 249, 2002.
- [90] C. He, J.S. Kennedy, T. F. Coleman, P. A. Forsyth, Y. Li, and K. R. Vetzal. Calibration and hedging under jump diffusion. *Review of Derivative Research*, 9(1):1–35, 2006.
- [91] D. Heath, E. Platen, and M. Schweizer. Numerical comparison of local risk-minimisation and mean-variance hedging. In *Option pricing, interest rates and risk management*, pages 509–537. (ed. E. Jouini, J. Cvitanic and, M. Musiela), Cambridge Univ. Press, 2001b.
- [92] Sebas Hendriks and Claude Martini. The extended ssvi volatility surface. *Available at SSRN 2971502*, 2017.
- [93] Steven L Heston. A closed-form solution for options with stochastic volatility with applications to bond and currency options. *Review of financial studies*, 6(2):327–343, 1993.
- [94] Steven L Heston and Saikat Nandi. A closed-form garch option valuation model. *The review of financial studies*, 13(3):585–625, 2000.
- [95] Morris W Hirsch. Convergent activation dynamics in continuous time networks. *Neural networks*, 2(5):331–349, 1989.
- [96] Sepp Hochreiter and Jürgen Schmidhuber. Long short-term memory. *Neural computation*, 9(8):1735–1780, 1997.
- [97] Sepp Hochreiter, Yoshua Bengio, Paolo Frasconi, Jürgen Schmidhuber, et al. Gradient flow in recurrent nets: the difficulty of learning long-term dependencies, 2001.
- [98] John J Hopfield. Neural networks and physical systems with emergent collective computational abilities. *Proceedings of the national academy of sciences*, 79(8):2554–2558, 1982.

- [99] K. Hornik. Approximation capabilities of multilayer feedforward networks. *Neural Networks*, 4(2):251–257, 1991.
- [100] Peter J Huber et al. Robust estimation of a location parameter. *The annals of mathematical statistics*, 35(1):73–101, 1964.
- [101] John Hull and Alan White. The pricing of options on assets with stochastic volatilities. *The journal of finance*, 42(2):281–300, 1987.
- [102] John Hull and Alan White. Optimal delta hedging for options. *Journal of Banking & Finance*, 82:180–190, 2017.
- [103] John C Hull. *Options, futures, and other derivatives*. Pearson Education India, 2006.
- [104] James M Hutchinson, Andrew W Lo, and Tomaso Poggio. A nonparametric approach to pricing and hedging derivative securities via learning networks. *The Journal of Finance*, 49(3):851–889, 1994.
- [105] Jens Jackwerth and Mark Rubinstein. Recovering probability distributions from option prices. *The Journal of Finance*, 51(5):1611–1631, 1996.
- [106] Ling Jian, Zhonghang Xia, Xijun Liang, and Chuanhou Gao. Design of a multiple kernel learning algorithm for ls-svm by convex programming. *Neural Networks*, 24(5):476–483, 2011.
- [107] Licheng Jiao, Liefeng Bo, and Ling Wang. Fast sparse approximation for least squares support vector machine. *IEEE Transactions on Neural Networks*, 18(3):685–697, 2007.
- [108] Michael I Jordan. Serial order: A parallel distributed processing approach. Technical report, CALIFORNIA UNIV SAN DIEGO LA JOLLA INST FOR COGNITIVE SCIENCE, 1986.
- [109] Diederik P Kingma and Jimmy Ba. Adam: A method for stochastic optimization. *arXiv preprint arXiv:1412.6980*, 2014.
- [110] Diederik P Kingma and Max Welling. Auto-encoding variational bayes. *arXiv preprint arXiv:1312.6114*, 2013.
- [111] Steven G Kou. A jump-diffusion model for option pricing. *Management science*, 48(8):1086–1101, 2002.
- [112] Nathan Lassance and Frédéric Vrans. A comparison of pricing and hedging performances of equity derivatives models. *Applied Economics*, 50(10):1122–1137, 2018.
- [113] Quoc V Le, Navdeep Jaitly, and Geoffrey E Hinton. A simple way to initialize recurrent networks of rectified linear units. *arXiv preprint arXiv:1504.00941*, 2015.

- [114] Felix Lenders, Christian Kirches, and Andreas Potschka. trlib: A vector-free implementation of the gltr method for iterative solution of the trust region problem. *Optimization Methods and Software*, 33(3):420–449, 2018.
- [115] Zachary C Lipton, John Berkowitz, and Charles Elkan. A critical review of recurrent neural networks for sequence learning. *arXiv preprint arXiv:1506.00019*, 2015.
- [116] Philip M Long and Rocco A Servedio. Random classification noise defeats all convex potential boosters. *Machine learning*, 78(3):287–304, 2010.
- [117] Andrew L Maas, Quoc V Le, Tyler M O’Neil, Oriol Vinyals, Patrick Nguyen, and Andrew Y Ng. Recurrent neural networks for noise reduction in robust asr. In *Thirteenth Annual Conference of the International Speech Communication Association*, 2012.
- [118] Andrew L Maas, Awni Y Hannun, and Andrew Y Ng. Rectifier nonlinearities improve neural network acoustic models. In *Proc. icml*, volume 30, page 3, 2013.
- [119] Mary Malliaris and Linda Salchenberger. A neural network model for estimating option prices. *Applied Intelligence*, 3(3):193–206, 1993.
- [120] Benoit Mandelbrot. The variation of certain speculative prices. *The journal of business*, 36(4):394–419, 1963.
- [121] Elena Marchiori, Niels HH Heegaard, Mikkel West-Nielsen, and Connie R Jimenez. Feature selection for classification with proteomic data of mixed quality. In *Computational Intelligence in Bioinformatics and Computational Biology, 2005. CIBCB’05. Proceedings of the 2005 IEEE Symposium on*, pages 1–7. IEEE, 2005.
- [122] James Martens. Deep learning via hessian-free optimization. In *ICML*, volume 27, pages 735–742, 2010.
- [123] James Martens and Ilya Sutskever. Learning recurrent neural networks with hessian-free optimization. In *Proceedings of the 28th International Conference on Machine Learning (ICML-11)*, pages 1033–1040. Citeseer, 2011.
- [124] Michael McCloskey and Neal J Cohen. Catastrophic interference in connectionist networks: The sequential learning problem. In *Psychology of learning and motivation*, volume 24, pages 109–165. Elsevier, 1989.
- [125] James Mercer. Functions of positive and negative type, and their connection with the theory of integral equations. *Philosophical transactions of the royal society of London. Series A, containing papers of a mathematical or physical character*, 209:415–446, 1909.
- [126] R. Merton. The theory of rational option pricing. *Bell Journal of Economics and Management Science*, 4:141–183, 1973.

- [127] Robert C Merton. Theory of rational option pricing. *The Bell Journal of economics and management science*, pages 141–183, 1973.
- [128] Dmytro Mishkin and Jiri Matas. All you need is a good init. *arXiv preprint arXiv:1511.06422*, 2015.
- [129] Michael C Mozer. A focused back-propagation algorithm for temporal pattern recognition. *Complex systems*, 3(4):349–381, 1989.
- [130] Yurii Nesterov. A method for unconstrained convex minimization problem with the rate of convergence  $O(1/k^2)$ . In *Doklady an SSSR*, volume 269, pages 543–547, 1983.
- [131] Ke Nian, Thomas F Coleman, and Yuying Li. Learning minimum variance discrete hedging directly from the market. *Quantitative Finance*, pages 1–14, 2018.
- [132] Ke Nian, Thomas F Coleman, and Yuying Li. Learning sequential option hedging models from market data. *Journal of Banking and Finance*, 2019. Accepted Pending Revision.
- [133] Ke Nian, Thomas F Coleman, and Yuying Li. Learning sequential total hedging models from market data. Submitted, 2019.
- [134] Christopher Olah. Understanding lstm networks. *GITHUB blog, posted on August, 27: 2015*, 2015.
- [135] LLC OptionMetrics. Ivy db file and data reference manual, 2008.
- [136] Tapio Pahikkala, Jorma Boberg, and Tapio Salakoski. Fast n-fold cross-validation for regularized least-squares. In *Proceedings of the ninth Scandinavian conference on artificial intelligence (SCAI 2006)*, pages 83–90. Otamedia Oy, Espoo, Finland, 2006.
- [137] Fernando De Meer Pardo and Rafael Cobo López. Mitigating overfitting on financial datasets with generative adversarial networks. *The Journal of Financial Data Science*, 2(1):76–85, 2020.
- [138] Ning Qian. On the momentum term in gradient descent learning algorithms. *Neural networks*, 12(1):145–151, 1999.
- [139] K. Poulsen R., R. Schenk-Hoppé, and C.-O Ewald. Risk minimization in stochastic volatility models: model risk and empirical performance. *Quantitative Finance*, 9(6):693–704, 2009.
- [140] Garvesh Raskutti, Martin J Wainwright, and Bin Yu. Early stopping and non-parametric regression: an optimal data-dependent stopping rule. *The Journal of Machine Learning Research*, 15(1):335–366, 2014.
- [141] Sashank J Reddi, Satyen Kale, and Sanjiv Kumar. On the convergence of adam and beyond. In *International Conference on Learning Representations*, 2018.

- [142] Sashank J Reddi, Satyen Kale, and Sanjiv Kumar. On the convergence of adam and beyond. *arXiv preprint arXiv:1904.09237*, 2019.
- [143] Marko Robnik-Šikonja and Igor Kononenko. Theoretical and empirical analysis of relieff and rrelieff. *Machine learning*, 53(1-2):23–69, 2003.
- [144] Mark Rubinstein. Implied binomial trees. *The Journal of Finance*, 49(3):771–818, 1994.
- [145] Sebastian Ruder. An overview of gradient descent optimization algorithms. *arXiv preprint arXiv:1609.04747*, 2016.
- [146] Andrew M Saxe, James L McClelland, and Surya Ganguli. Exact solutions to the nonlinear dynamics of learning in deep linear neural networks. *arXiv preprint arXiv:1312.6120*, 2013.
- [147] M. Schäl. On quadratic cost criteria for option hedging. *Mathematics of Operation Research*, 19(1):121–131, 1994.
- [148] M. Schweizer. Variance-optimal hedging in discrete time. *Mathematics of Operation Research*, 20:1–32, 1995.
- [149] Martin Schweizer. A guided tour through quadratic hedging approaches. *Option Pricing, Interest Rates and Risk Management*, page 538.
- [150] Martin Schweizer. Variance-optimal hedging in discrete time. *Mathematics of Operations Research*, 20(1):1–32, 1995.
- [151] Steven E Shreve. *Stochastic calculus for finance II: Continuous-time models*, volume 11. Springer Science & Business Media, 2004.
- [152] Alex J Smola and Bernhard Schölkopf. Sparse greedy matrix approximation for machine learning. In *Proceedings of the Seventeenth International Conference on Machine Learning*, pages 911–918. Morgan Kaufmann Publishers Inc., 2000.
- [153] Ilya Sutskever, James Martens, George Dahl, and Geoffrey Hinton. On the importance of initialization and momentum in deep learning. In *International conference on machine learning*, pages 1139–1147, 2013.
- [154] Ilya Sutskever, Oriol Vinyals, and Quoc V Le. Sequence to sequence learning with neural networks. In *Advances in neural information processing systems*, pages 3104–3112, 2014.
- [155] Richard S Sutton. Two problems with backpropagation and other steepest-descent learning procedures for networks. In *Proc. 8th annual conf. cognitive science society*, pages 823–831. Erlbaum, 1986.
- [156] Johan AK Suykens, Tony Van Gestel, and Jos De Brabanter. *Least squares support vector machines*. World Scientific, 2002.

- [157] Mingkui Tan, Li Wang, and Ivor W Tsang. Learning sparse svm for feature selection on very high dimensional datasets. In *Proceedings of the 27th international conference on machine learning (ICML-10)*, pages 1047–1054, 2010.
- [158] Aditya Tayal, Thomas F Coleman, and Yuying Li. Primal explicit max margin feature selection for nonlinear support vector machines. *Pattern Recognition*, 47(6):2153–2164, 2014.
- [159] Tijmen Tieleman and Geoffrey Hinton. Lecture 6.5-rmsprop: Divide the gradient by a running average of its recent magnitude. *COURSERA: Neural networks for machine learning*, 4(2):26–31, 2012.
- [160] Vladimir Naumovich Vapnik. *Statistical learning theory*, volume 1. Wiley New York, 1998.
- [161] Manik Varma and Bodla Rakesh Babu. More generality in efficient multiple kernel learning. In *Proceedings of the 26th Annual International Conference on Machine Learning*, pages 1065–1072. ACM, 2009.
- [162] Grace Wahba. *Spline models for observational data*, volume 59. Siam, 1990.
- [163] Kuaini Wang and Ping Zhong. Robust non-convex least squares loss function for regression with outliers. *Knowledge-Based Systems*, 71:290–302, 2014.
- [164] Paul J Werbos. Generalization of backpropagation with application to a recurrent gas market model. *Neural networks*, 1(4):339–356, 1988.
- [165] Christopher KI Williams and Matthias Seeger. Using the nyström method to speed up kernel machines. In *Advances in neural information processing systems*, pages 682–688, 2001.
- [166] Yichao Wu and Yufeng Liu. Robust truncated hinge loss support vector machines. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 102(479):974–983, 2007.
- [167] Linli Xu, Koby Crammer, and Dale Schuurmans. Robust support vector machine training via convex outlier ablation. In *AAAI*, volume 6, pages 536–542, 2006.
- [168] Peng Xu, Farbod Roosta-Khorasan, and Michael W Mahoney. Second-order optimization for non-convex machine learning: An empirical study. *arXiv preprint arXiv:1708.07827*, 2017.
- [169] Xiaowei Yang, Liangjun Tan, and Lifang He. A robust least squares support vector machine for regression and classification with noise. *Neurocomputing*, 140:41–52, 2014.
- [170] Jingtao Yao, Yili Li, and Chew Lim Tan. Option price forecasting using neural networks. *Omega*, 28(4):455–466, 2000.



- [171] Zhewei Yao, Peng Xu, Farbod Roosta-Khorasani, and Michael W Mahoney. Inexact non-convex newton-type methods. *arXiv preprint arXiv:1802.06925*, 2018.
- [172] Adonis Yatchew and Wolfgang Härdle. Nonparametric state price density estimation using constrained least squares and the bootstrap. *Journal of Econometrics*, 133(2):579–599, 2006.
- [173] Wenpeng Yin, Katharina Kann, Mo Yu, and Hinrich Schütze. Comparative study of cnn and rnn for natural language processing. *arXiv preprint arXiv:1702.01923*, 2017.
- [174] Yao-liang Yu, Özlem Aslan, and Dale Schuurmans. A polynomial-time form of robust regression. In *Advances in Neural Information Processing Systems*, pages 2483–2491, 2012.
- [175] Yaoliang Yu, Xun Zheng, Micol Marchetti-Bowick, and Eric Xing. Minimizing nonconvex non-separable functions. In *Artificial Intelligence and Statistics*, pages 1107–1115, 2015.
- [176] Haynes HM Yung and Hua Zhang. An empirical investigation of the garch option pricing model: hedging performance. *Journal of Futures Markets: Futures, Options, and Other Derivative Products*, 23(12):1191–1207, 2003.
- [177] Matthew D Zeiler. Adadelta: an adaptive learning rate method. *arXiv preprint arXiv:1212.5701*, 2012.